

AMERICAN HISTORICAL  
== ASSOCIATION ==

# 1998 Annual Report



## 1998 Annual Report of the American Historical Association

Annual Report of the Executive Director .....	2
Annual Report of the Professional Division .....	14
Annual Report of the Research Division .....	16
Annual Report of the Teaching Division .....	18
Annual Report of the <i>American Historical Review</i> Editor .....	20
Report of the 1998 AHA Program Committee .....	22
Report of the AHA 1998 Nominating Committee .....	24
Minutes of the Council Meeting, January 8, 1998 .....	28
Minutes of the Council Meeting, January 11, 1998 .....	50
Minutes of the Council Meeting, May 31-June 1, 1998 .....	76
1998 AHA Membership Report .....	109
1998 Committee Structure .....	136
25-Year Members of the American Historical Association .....	140
50-Year Members of the American Historical Association .....	141
Association Thanks 1998 Endowment Donors .....	142
1998 Award for Scholarly Distinction .....	143
1998 Book Awards .....	151
Financial Report of the AHA for the Year Ended June 30, 1998 .....	156

# **Annual Report of the Executive Director**

By Sandria Freitag, Executive Director

September 1, 1998

During the year just concluded, we began to bring to fruition the efforts organized over the last four years and focused on the activities at the heart of the Association—its member services and programmatic initiatives. Given that many of these efforts have taken the full four years to develop, we have also gained valuable experience in designing and pursuing new ways to accomplish the ongoing mission of the Association. For that reason alone, it gives me pleasure to outline the broad range of issues and programs the AHA has succeeded in mounting on behalf of its members and the field. The details given below also illuminate aspects of recent debates on the value of contributions made by scholarly societies: discussion in the press has focused almost entirely on annual meetings and the journal. Both of these enterprises form core activities for the AHA, and this program illustrates well the depth and breadth offered to the field by this opportunity to meet annually. (See also the report by *AHR* editor Michael Grossberg, which demonstrates the type of leadership among journal editors that reaches even beyond the pages of the publication.) Nevertheless, I hope the much more complex reach and more encompassing vision of the Association is delineated by the descriptions of our work on programs and member services, detailed below. Annual meetings and scholarly publications gain much by operating in the larger context of an organization concerned with the broadest range of professional and intellectual issues.

## **Expanding the Reach of the AHA**

### **1. COALITIONS, COLLABORATIONS, AND LEADERSHIP FOR THE FIELD**

Forming productive partnerships has emerged over the last several years as the key strategy for the AHA. Only in this way can “umbrella” organizations, determined to serve a field through a broad array of activities, afford to expand their reach in a period of increasing costs and steady-state financing realities. Collaborative work on several fronts has enabled the AHA to accomplish several key goals identified in its earlier planning discussions (see last year’s Executive Director’s Report).

We made significant steps forward on professional and intellectual programmatic fronts last September through two conferences organized with other societies from the American Council of Learned Societies (ACLS) and similar partners. Pursuing an issue identified more than four years ago by the Professional Division, the AHA mobilized a number of other ACLS societies to work on the growing use of part-time and adjunct faculty. This ongoing effort provides an informative model of national organizations working together—in this case, to tackle changes in the way campuses operate across departments. It is clear that there will be a number of such changes in the coming decade, as aspects of downsizing and corporate measures of “accountability” and “productivity” come to be felt more dramatically. (For details on the part-time/adjunct project, see section on Professional Division, below.)

Similarly, the AHA played an active role in organizing and participating in a conference on the endangered monograph, organized under the auspices of the ACLS, American Association of University Presses and Association of Research Libraries (ARL). Authors and readers of monographic research will not be surprised that the conference presentations sketched a complex interplay of developments that has led to the current, sharp downturn in the publication of monographs, ranging from dramatic shifts in the library market as libraries struggle to pay high prices for commercial science journals, to campus demands that academic presses become self-sustaining businesses, to the unnecessary reliance of tenure committees on decisions made by

presses about publishing the research of those up for tenure (see Director's Desk column, *Perspectives*, November 1997). Presented during the meeting was a proposal crafted by the AHA and ARL to form a new partnership organization that would help spread the risks and costs of keeping monographic research alive and well-disseminated by bringing together an entirely new constellation of partners, including scholarly societies, academic presses, libraries, and some commercial print-on-demand businesses.

In each case, these national conferences help to solidify the AHA's working relationships with other organizations and delineate the next steps that we can take in concert with our collaborators. This approach has been particularly productive around the monograph discussions, which have now become situated in conversations jointly sponsored by the ACLS and the National Academy of Sciences (NAS). Searching for a way to direct intellectual partnerships between humanists and computing specialists, the ACLS/NAS Steering Committee is fostering a series of "Building Block" projects within specific fields that will describe how each field represents the knowledge it develops and disseminates in the traditional print context. Based on these characterizations (which will also chart change over time), the projects will then try to anticipate the introduction of new technologies in order to identify what needs to be protected and perpetuated in the new environment and what values can be gained by harnessing new technology to achieve core goals in the discipline. History has been a leader in these discussions, and its Building Block project will, hopefully, lay the groundwork for anyone disseminating historical studies to do so in a way that ensures the widest access.

This large project achieves important intellectual gains through humanists working together and enlisting the aid of computing specialists in creating new technological advances shaped by the humanities' intellectual needs. In addition, it appears to point the way out of a longstanding dilemma in America, in which research on science receives funding support from a wide variety of federal and private sources, while that in the humanities does not. Initial conversations, at least, have been extremely promising—in large part because the ACLS/NAS work clusters together the intellectual practices and needs of a variety of humanistic disciplines (and interdisciplinary work) to trace larger patterns. The central organization facilitating these developments, I might note, is one in which the AHA became a founding member two years ago—the National Initiative for a Networked Cultural Heritage (NINCH)—which has become a natural meeting point for those interested in connecting the humanities with new technologies (on policy grounds as well as specific experiments that advance technological applications).

Beyond these activities conducted at the national level, the AHA has succeeded in winning funding support for two experimental collaborations that link national- and departmental-level efforts, and that bring historians together with area studies specialists under the rubric of world history. Both of these projects were designed especially to accomplish the goal, articulated during AHA planning discussions, that the AHA expand its membership by demonstrating the relevance of its programs and services to three underrepresented populations—community college faculty, area studies historians, and public historians (for the last group, see below).

With funding from the National Endowment for the Humanities (NEH) to revamp the history survey course, the AHA will work with three clusters of history faculty located in Wisconsin, California, and North Carolina. This project, overseen by the Teaching and Research divisions, creates a space within which community college and four-year faculty meet in exciting experiments in new forms of partnership that will bring together differing kinds of campuses in a locality, the respective clusters on a national level, and campus-based efforts with a national organization to encourage replication of the successes achieved in the project.

Similarly, with encouragement from the Ford Foundation, the AHA has expanded the Globalizing Regional Histories project created by the 1995 Program Committee (under the Research Division's auspices and with Council approval) to address the lack of participation by area studies historians in the annual meeting. From a modest series of co-sponsored sessions at

the annual meeting, the project now has several substantive activities planned for 1998-2000, all thematically focused on material and cultural interactions over time. This focus on interactions is used to situate historical developments and events, independent of the nation-state as a framing device. The activities include a summer seminar for community college faculty at the Library of Congress's area studies reading rooms, a conference, panel sessions at a number of the annual meetings of participating organizations, print and electronic publications, and a web site for discussion of the research and teaching materials created for the seminar, conference, and meeting sessions. The Steering Committee providing oversight to the project is an especially interesting aspect of the project: it is composed of representatives chosen by the eight participating organizations, which include several area studies associations, two affiliated societies, the Community College Humanities Association, and the Library of Congress.

Also following this new pattern of broad partnerships to serve our field and attract new members (in this case, public historians) is a new initiative being organized between the AHA and the Smithsonian's National Museum of American History. The project will treat six different themes over several years. Workshops focusing on both theoretical and practical issues will explore new trends in scholarship and their implications for the acquisition and presentation of museum collections in existing and future exhibitions. Each thematic set of discussions will involve academic- and museum-based historians, and will culminate in a public conference. The first conference will focus on American Identity in the Millennium, and the AHA's participation in the project will commence in February 1999. What marks this particular project is the systematic efforts by two national organizations to foster broad-based dialogue that draws on the respective strengths of the partners.

More traditionally, the AHA has participated in coalitions to pursue advocacy concerns. This work has certainly continued, albeit in an environment in which several legislators have tried to muffle the voices of nonprofit organizations (as compared to for-profit contractors). The newest effort in this respect has been legislative language that would have forced an unwieldy and dysfunctional form of member referendum regarding every policy stance taken by a board of a nonprofit; at current writing this proposal has as been defeated on several occasions, but it will certainly return in new guises in the future.

Despite the (deliberate) chilling effect imposed by such legislative efforts, the AHA continues to work within its coalitions to (1) protect the balance between fair use and intellectual property rights in an electronic environment; (2) work on restoring funding support for research (e.g., through NEH but also in other venues); (3) push for continued funding for the collection and analysis of national data on academic training and careers. Our long-term coalitions, especially the National Humanities Alliance, serve as the essential forums in which to craft policies and strategies for us to join with other scholarly organizations. However, we have expanded in recent years by joining new organizations such as the Digital Future Coalition, which specializes in legislative language and has brought us in concert with a much broader range of organizations concerned with the climate in which intellectual property issues will be defined, and NINCH, which also serves as a clearing house for both programmatic and advocacy policy activities.

These broad-based collaborations provide the frame for our work, where we can make common cause with others on issues that will benefit historians. In addition, two organizations within which the AHA has worked long and hard for issues of special concern to historians continue to serve as key elements in our advocacy arsenal, the National Coordinating Committee for the Promotion of History (NCC) and the National History Education Network (NHEN). The AHA continues to respond to the ongoing range of emerging issues connected to preservation, declassification, support for documentary editions, and access to government records; the Research Division and Council have sent letters and authorized the participation of the AHA in several lawsuits relating to these concerns, working especially through the NCC. Similarly, the current strength and effectiveness of NHEN has enabled our Teaching Division to work

consistently through a large range of uneven state standards in history, and to turn its attention toward assessment—very likely to be the next fundamental battleground in the schools for the good teaching of history.

## **2. EXPANDING OUR INFRASTRUCTURE FOR MEMBER SERVICES**

Of necessity, all too many words have been devoted in previous Executive Director's Reports to our need to improve the AHA's infrastructure. The traumas associated with upgrading our technical capacities and remedying neglect of our building, while agonizing to live through and presenting real financial costs to the Association, have been central to the AHA's ability to do its work better and more efficiently in the future. It therefore gives me great pleasure to turn from this kind of emphasis to the longer-term focus on improving and expanding member services—a capacity we gained when we upgraded our infrastructure.

Two new committees are hard at work this year, examining the myriad of aspects related to the Association's publishing program—which offers the most tangible of member benefits. A subcommittee of the Research Division has begun exploring the shape and impact of the transition to electronic dissemination of the journal, while the ad hoc Publications Advisory Committee has been reviewing our pamphlet and newsletter publications in all their ramifications, from our marketing efforts to the expansion of member services possible through simultaneous electronic and print publication. Taken together, this work will help the Association create a new and expanded approach to member services. Benefits of membership will become more tangible. In addition, enhanced access will support historians in all their activities, from teaching to writing, research, and work with the public. Central to this effort will be new functions on the Internet, including a search and reference service that we hope will interconnect book reviews, journal articles, pamphlets, and newsletter pieces, and a new fee space the Association is developing that will enable faster access of job listings to members, a directory of members, and—in the longer run—other publications (from pamphlets to collections of *Perspectives* pieces around particular topics).

These new and integrative approaches to the publishing program of the AHA have been occasioned, in part, by our much greater activity over the last two years in expanding the material we offer. Our various pamphlet series, for instance, will offer up to 20 new titles each year over the next several years. (The promising new partnership with an affiliated society described below indicates that new materials in this unique form of publication could sustain this level of production for some time.) One innovation we will introduce during 1998-99 gives members the opportunity to sign up for copies of everything we publish (including the *Directory of History Departments and Organizations*; *Grants, Fellowships, and Prizes of Interest to Historians*; and all other pamphlets printed in that year) for a price substantially below the per-item costs members would otherwise pay. We hope this new opportunity will expose many more members to the high quality and immense usefulness of our publications, and will also generate some "Research and Development Funds" that we can use to further enhance our capacities to disseminate good scholarship in new ways.

The Association has long had an Institutional Services Program (ISP) directing services and benefits to departments. For most of that time, however, ISP was a relatively low-key effort. Given the large number of educational policy issues that now confront departments, and that the AHA can best address by working in concert with departments, we have in recent years begun to deepen the connection with departments that the ISP enables. Three times each year we circulate to departments all of our recent publications (a number, as I noted above, that has been increasing steadily); we now use those mailing occasions to alert department chairs to policy issues being taken up by the AHA Council and committees. (These issues are discussed in more detail in the next section.) Acting on a strong request made to us during a department chairs' luncheon at the 1996 annual meeting, we set up a department chairs' listserv for ISP members last year; this forum has treated many of the policy issues with which AHA committees are grappling (from

relationships with adjuncts to spousal hiring) and several others the AHA must, inevitably, take up (such as distance learning). The listserv accomplishes other AHA goals, as well: it enables chairs to seek advice directly from each other (in an ongoing and consistent way not achievable through other occasions and media) and it helps to differentiate the problems and concerns specific to distinctive types of institutions (a service harder to accomplish in the large-audience activities of the AHA's publications and annual meeting). The chairs' lunch, itself, has focused increasingly on a discussion format that benefits from a close fit between the topics of sessions organized by AHA divisions and committees, thus providing a new opportunity for chairs to benefit from others' experiences and for the AHA to gain insights on issues facing departments—and what chairs would want the AHA to do about these issues. This year, for instance, the chairs' lunch will dovetail with the Professional Division's session on production of Ph.D.'s.

### **3. WORK WITH AFFILIATES AND BEYOND**

As a new presidential initiative under the direction of President Joseph Miller and President-elect Robert Darnton, the AHA is working to improve its relationship with affiliated societies in an emphasis similar to that focused on its relations with departments. The Association long has had constructive and cordial working interactions with a number of its 104 affiliates. One of our most popular pamphlets, for instance, is *Careers for Students of History*, which was co-published with the National Council on Public History. As demonstrated in the listings at the beginning of this program, we offer free meeting space to affiliates at each annual meeting. Under the new initiative, we are trying additional experiments to make these arrangements more helpful to the societies, including larger typeface in the program text and meeting signs for each of the sessions they offer. We have also set up a listserv to explore together what other mutually beneficial actions can be taken.

Another experiment—under discussion for the last four years, and with final details still to be worked out—may suggest an equally advantageous form of partnership between the AHA and some affiliates. Filling a role similar to that played in the past by our divisions and committees, the Society for the History of Technology will organize and oversee a co-published series of pamphlets of broad and general interest on technology in history. Like our other series, these pamphlets will be written by experts in their fields but targeted for non-specialist readers; they will provide a synthetic overview and an evaluative introduction to the literature. We anticipate meeting the needs of our regular pamphlet audiences, who range from graduate students and faculty interested in adding a new set of issues and materials to their teaching, to K-12 teachers and overseas scholars. Not all affiliated societies would be interested in providing this kind of broadly focused publications, but it seems likely that a similar undertaking could be planned with at least a few of the other specialized organizations who affiliate with us.

### **Governance and programs, through the Association's structures**

The constitution assigns to each of the divisions and committees a specific set of responsibilities, generally shaped by the constituencies and/or realm of professional activity for which it is responsible. In the last two years, these assignments have been enriched by additional activities that systematically and coherently address the interests of all the committees.

First, they have built on their ability to offer sessions at the annual meeting, making this a key stratagem for opening up discussion in the field on important policy issues that they have identified. Second, they have fulfilled their constitutional assignments by creating and overseeing important contributions to the AHA's publishing program, simultaneously serving members and increasing the AHA's financial stability by broadening its revenue base (see Finance section, below). Third, they have responded to requests from Council that each committee also explore the issuance of appropriate documents describing "Good Practices" or even "Guidelines" for policy issues under their purview. Taken together, these emerging documents provide valuable guidance

for historians and history departments, as well as crucial “ammunition” for departments to use in campus discussions that threaten to erode quality and the importance assigned to teaching students to think historically.

## 1. TEACHING DIVISION

The Teaching Division was, perhaps, the first to identify key areas in which guidance would be helpful. Over the last two years, it has issued guidelines for good textbooks, revised the existing guidelines for AHA endorsement of external projects, and written guidelines for standards of history/social studies. Its latest contribution has been an influential and persuasive statement on “Excellence in Teaching” that delineates the institutional as well as individual contributions necessary to ensure that students are taught well. This statement has been taken up widely (the National Archives, for instance, has organized many of its learning materials around the statement), and it stands as a model for the other divisions’ statements, as well.

Equal attention has been focused on the teaching of history beyond the four-year institutions. For instance, the division also continues to be actively involved in reviewing state-level history/social studies standards for K-12 students, working with historian-members in those states and with other organizations (through the coordination of NHEN). It has brought several community college initiatives to fruition, including a pamphlet co-published with the Organization of American Historians and the Community College Humanities Association intended to guide graduate students and their advisers, and to connect community college faculty to each other and the three professional organizations. The NEH-sponsored project described earlier represents one of the most ambitious efforts fostered for several years by the division, as it was designed to create a shared space for four-year and two-year faculty to work together. The division also has met regularly with those affiliated societies that emphasize teaching in their mission (especially linkages with K-12), to discuss shared concerns and to pursue possibilities for collaboration.

Division members also devoted considerable time and energy to publications. A number of single pamphlets, in development for more than five years, are finally being concluded this year. Some of these will be available in the “free” space of the Association’s home page (including advice for minority students who want to get the most from their education, suggestions for potential majors on what they could hope to acquire with a history major, and teaching graduate students to teach. A forthcoming pamphlet will deal with the responsibilities of departments to those teaching history in K-12). The division also began reviewing past *Perspectives* articles to see if it would serve members well to have collections on specific teaching subjects published together to be made available in pamphlet form.

Certainly one of the greatest measures of success for the division is the shift in its role at the annual meeting. Four years ago, it was essential that the division prompt session proposals focused on teaching, and advocate for them within the governance structure. Now, not only do a significant number of proposals come forward from the membership at large, but these sessions consistently enjoy overflow audiences. This presents the division with the luxury of focusing its sponsored sessions on particular policies and approaches that it wishes to explore. This year, for instance, the division developed two sessions focused on the use of primary sources in the classroom, creating a classroom situation and modeling the approaches they think will work best (see sessions 57 and 84, *Teaching United States History: Politics and Culture of the 1930s* and *Teaching World History: Ibn Battuta and the Cosmopolitan Fourteenth Century*).

Now under the direction of a new vice president, the division is exploring the best ways to implement its interests in linking history departments and K-12 (see the September issue of *Perspectives*, p. 19). With the increasing depth of the AHA’s ties to departments, and its new capacities to share experiences and models through the Internet, members may expect this to be a major new initiative.



## 2. RESEARCH DIVISION

In a process parallel to that now being undertaken by the Teaching Division, the Research Division defined for itself last year two top policy issues: attention to intellectual property rights and the future of area studies and their relation to history. Both have been growth areas for scholars as well as the AHA. Both are now being pursued through major AHA projects to be underwritten with external funding and worked through collaborations. As always, the division continues to be the chief conduit for the AHA's advocacy activities, particularly as these relate to the broad field of intellectual property legislation and to the narrower topic of archival and library access for scholars (and, especially, historians). Finally, its oversight responsibilities for the journal and the annual program have led it into new kinds of deliberations and governance demands.

The management of intellectual property is an important issue for the RD, both in the abstract and in concrete terms regarding dissemination of the journal. Efforts to foster a good balance between fair use and control over intellectual material, in the inchoate mix of politicized, commercial, and often adversarial conditions of the current debates, will profoundly affect historians in their many guises as creators, users, and owners of intellectual property. Clearly nothing will affect historical scholarship and its dissemination more profoundly. Division members have been exploring with external experts a range of developments in this world, as well as monitoring closely the legislative developments emerging from this Congress (for regular updates, see fall issues of *Perspectives*). In addition, all of these issues have been brought close to home for them, especially, by the need to recommend to Council how best to disseminate current issues of the *American Historical Review* (see also Michael Grossberg's report in this report). Through an ad hoc subcommittee, the division is working with the editor and headquarters to establish the grounds for decision-making that will best serve the intellectual mission of the journal (and the Association) while protecting the significant financial investment (and return) represented by the journal. Beyond Council and division members, the ad hoc group includes experts in journal publishing and legal issues, and will consult financial advisers as well. Its final report will be framed in a way to be helpful to other associations (such as affiliates) in identifying the key issues to address, and the range of options to be considered.

As described in the first section of this report, a Research Division project will be undertaken over the next two years that addresses the changing paradigm of "area studies" and how history fits into this intellectual arena. Particularly promising in this project is the experiment of working with other organizations—area studies learned societies as well as AHA affiliates in history—to explore on a national (rather than campus) level the intellectual promise in this approach, especially as it interacts with the expansion of interest and involvement in world history.

The division's work with the annual meeting program committee has embodied a shared concern (held by program committees, Council, and the division) to be sure that the program, befitting an umbrella organization, encompasses the broadest possible range of historical fields and interests. These results are made concrete in this year's program and in the call for proposals publicized in fall issues of *Perspectives* by next year's committee. The 1998 Program Committee should be recognized, especially, for working on underrepresented fields and in a much more intensive way with affiliated societies—and I think the sessions listed in this booklet illustrate what good results have emerged from this hard work. In addition, the RD demonstrates in this program the potential for its own sponsored session, which has moved rather dramatically from a policy focus to one on intellectual content (see no. 2, *Historians' Use of Non-textual Materials*).

Finally, in response to the call from Council, the division has been deliberating on one or more statements regarding the good practices that support scholarship and the fundamental role played by research, through its connections to such matters as good teaching. (See, for instance, no. 85, co-sponsored with the Graduate Student Task Force, on *What Constitutes a Good Graduate Department? Graduate Students' Perspectives*.) It has also discussed how it might

underscore the significance for historians of the changing circumstances in which libraries and librarians operate. These deliberations suggest that very promising documents will emerge from this division as well.

### 3. PROFESSIONAL DIVISION

The Professional Division continues to meet its constitutional assignment to investigate complaints about unprofessional conduct. However, the revised procedures introduced two years ago have successfully limited the members' caseload to complaints and processes within their expertise and capacity as a committee. In turn, this smaller caseload has enabled them to respond to a burgeoning series of policy issues ranging from downsizing to overproduction of PhD's and, as a concern of long standing, the expanded use of part-time and adjunct faculty. Expanded need to deal with issues related to the professional life of historians is a measure of the complex changes now taking place in the academy, and underscores the central importance to the Association of having a division that grapples with these issues in forms and forums far beyond individual cases.

The work undertaken this past year has set firm foundations for an enhanced role for the division in professional policy issues. Arguably the issue most consistently pursued by the division (work next year will take place in a third vice president's term), the expanded use of part-time and adjunct faculty stands as an example of the best way the Association can tackle professional policy issues, by reaching out to other associations (see first section of this report). The conference offered in September 1997 brought together not only the 11 national associations who planned and sponsored the three-day meeting, but solicited position papers on 12 different aspects of the issue, and invited as participants a wide range of association members who could voice the experiences and insights of deans, department chairs, faculty members, adjuncts, and graduate students. The report issued by the conference (and subsequently adopted by boards of a number of scholarly associations) defined the issue, described "good practices" across the disciplines, and suggested next steps the collaborators could pursue. This statement has generated good press coverage (ranging from the *Chronicle of Higher Education* to *Science* and an NPR station), and has prompted additional activity within the partner associations. In the follow-up phase, an even larger number of ACLS societies have joined in (as well as those outside the ACLS fold, such as Math and Chemistry), to work on the "next steps" outlined in the report. (The collaboration is also facilitated by the Modern Languages Association council commitment to provide staff support for the cooperative work undertaken by the group.) Four ad hoc work groups are presently focusing on specific next steps, including working with accreditation organizations (recognized as the best way to put pressure on campuses) and creating a press release that can be used with state legislatures, governing boards, and the like. The group also hopes to collect a number of 'good practices' examples from model campuses, so that publicity can be given to those campuses who use adjuncts well. It also will explore the possibilities of conducting special research to document the economic and other hidden costs involved in this expanding practice.

Within the AHA, the division has followed up this report, first, by crafting a "Good Practices" statement on the use of adjuncts that Council approved at its June 1998 meeting. These "good practices" cover both academic and work-related treatment of part-time and adjunct faculty. In addition, Council approved a PD recommendation to add a notation to the listings in the *Directory of History Departments* that indicates how many courses taught by part-time and adjunct faculty are included among each department's offerings. This data, helpful to those who consult the *Directory*, will also enable the AHA to track use of part-time/adjunct faculty more systematically in the future.

Another significant success achieved by the division has been the expanded use of the sponsored session as a way to work with the membership on knotty professional issues. (Whenever possible, sessions have been integrated into a three-part strategy that also includes

consultation with departments—during the department chairs’ lunch, over the listserv, or through the ISP mailings—and coverage in the newsletter.) The sessions offered in this program illustrate the complex and controversial topics the division must take up if it is to satisfactorily serve AHA members and the field (see, for instance, session no. 30, *Doing American Diplomatic History in the Twenty-First Century*; no. 56, *The Job Market and the Production of Ph.D.’s in History*; and no. 83, *Roundtable on Unionization and University Governance*).

A longstanding division commitment at the annual meeting is session number one—the interviewing workshop for graduate students, co-sponsored with the affiliated society, the Coordinating Council on Women in History and the Task Force on Graduate Student Education (see below). Organizing this complicated undertaking is an example of the larger concern with graduate student issues that the division has also demonstrated over the past several years. Arguing that graduate student issues affect the profession now as well as later, the PD, above all other divisions, has worked especially hard with the graduate student elected to Council and, through her, with the Task Force on Graduate Education.

While the division decided not to pursue pamphlet publications, it has worked continuously on the widely distributed statements and policy guidelines issued by the AHA. This year, beyond the new “Good Practices” statement on part-time and adjunct faculty, it has revised the job listings statement, reviewed the interviewing guidelines, and issued the 1998 *Statement on Standards*. To the extent that departments and individuals follow the good advice captured in these documents, the case work of the division can dwindle to an even smaller proportion of its workload.

#### **4. COMMITTEES ON WOMEN AND MINORITY HISTORIANS**

As committees that report directly to the Council, the two standing committees on Women and Minority Historians have also labored within the context described in the introductory paragraph of this section, working through annual meeting sessions, publications, and statements to encourage good practices in the profession. Central to their concerns, of course, are the changing challenges, presented by current legal and social realities, to the commitment to diversify the history profession. Their institutional assignment within the AHA governance structure includes searching for ways to effectively monitor and encourage institutions toward this goal of a highly diverse profession.

Both committees have made good progress on pamphlet series: a number of pamphlet manuscripts have been received for the *Teaching Diversity* series of the Committee on Minority Historians (CMH); they will be published throughout the year. Authors have been selected and are at hard at work in the Committee on Women Historians’ (CWH) series on the history of women and feminist theory in global perspective; we expect to begin publishing this pamphlet series before the end of the 1998-99 academic year, and will conclude the series in the next year. Taken together, these two series greatly enrich the AHA publishing program, simultaneously accomplishing two fundamental goals for the Association—they directly meet members’ needs, and they provide significant assistance in making publication revenues a larger proportion of the overall income. (This diversification of the revenue base ensures more stable funding for the Association over the long run. See Finance, below.)

The presence of both committees at the annual meeting is among the several important responsibilities they assume. Each sponsors a social gathering—the CMH’s reception is probably the best attended and convivial of those on offer, and the Women’s Breakfast speaker each year has provided some of the most thought-provoking observations for us all to ponder. The sessions organized by the two committees often demonstrate the fruitful overlap of professional and intellectual issues with which these two committees grapple each year. This year, for instance, the CMH is sponsoring a session (no. 3) entitled *Seeing Is Believing: Presenting History and Culture in Public Places*, while the CWH has organized no. 4, *Women and Violence in Comparative Perspective*.

That the committees also take on fundamental policy issues and their implications for the AHA and the field may be attested by two projects on the agenda of the Committee on Women Historians. For some time now, the CWH has been exploring with public historians and their organizations how best to serve (and, especially, to chart the careers of) public historians, who tend to be statistically and institutionally invisible in the structures that serve the field. (It has not been possible, for instance, to address this cohort in the invaluable report on diversity issued periodically by the CWH.) While no definitive answer has yet emerged, these discussions are beginning to identify particular projects and partnerships that may be able to address these lacunae. Similarly, the CWH published in *Perspectives* and on the web site a draft statement on spousal hiring, and called for comments from the field. It hopes, based on the discussion prompted in this way, to create a document on “Good Practices” that could be used by campuses and departments interested in tackling this problem. Judging by the number of exchanges on this issue last spring on the department chairs’ listserv, it is clear that this issue does, indeed, capture the concern and interest of our departments.

## **5. TASK FORCE ON GRADUATE EDUCATION**

Along with a name change, the ad hoc task force focused on graduate students also changed composition and form of working this year; its substantive contributions to the AHA remain the same, and its long-term potential is still being explored. In its new organizational guise, the committee is predominantly composed of graduate students who come by virtue of their positions on the council and the CMH and CWH, with additional at-large members named by the Committee on Committees. To replace the automatic connections achieved through the presence of division members on the task force, at-large members have been assigned to serve as liaison with each division.

In this second phase, the taskforce continues to work hard on sessions for the annual meeting. This year, for instance, they continue to co-sponsor the interviewing workshop, and have also organized sessions on *Graduate Student Unions* (no. 32), *Alternative Careers for Historians* (no. 59), and *What Constitutes a Good History Department?* (no. 85 with the Research Division). In addition it expects to expand coverage of graduate student issues in *Perspectives*, a new graduate student contributing-editor will be named to this responsibility. Finally, a number of potential issues have emerged from recent Council discussions, and it is anticipated that the graduate student Council member who chairs the task force will take these issues to the group for further deliberation and response.

## **Finances**

Even the discussion of AHA financial advances brings pleasure this year! After three years of planned deficits, necessary to reposition the Association for the future, we are now well placed for years of balanced budgets, based on stable funding that should generate sufficient revenues to underwrite the costs necessitated by a changing technological environment and the desire to expand our services to members and the field. (For specific details, see the annual auditor’s report that is now published each winter in *Perspectives*.) We are particularly gratified that, in the course of consulting last year with external accounting firms, we were assured by two of the best that the AHA is in good financial health. The good news comes on many fronts, most explicable if we divide the issues we have faced over the last several years into three topics—operating budget, one-time expenditures, and capital budget.

The operating budget of the Association began to be imperiled about five years ago, because (a) there had been no attempt for two years to bring in outside money; (b) we were in the midst of the reaction to a substantial dues increase and so had a downturn in membership; and (c) no planning had been done to stabilize and expand the sources of our revenues. The numbers that will be reported for FY 1997-98, when placed in this five-year context, are very encouraging, as

all three of the characteristics described have been reversed, and we are beginning to see positive results that will grow in coming fiscal years. That is, (a) we now have significant infusions of funds from external funders; (b) our membership numbers are also up a bit: we may take them as an indication that we have growing support from the field for the activities and leadership demonstrated by the AHA (e.g., the membership report for March 30, 1998 indicates that each of the categories for area studies historians is up by 2 percent over the last five years); and (c) our revenue streams beyond membership have been solid and are expanding, giving us a much broader and more stable base to work from, in future. This is particularly true for the publications cost center, which we had targeted four years ago as the primary focus for growth: expenditures are a bit lower than anticipated, thanks to good competitive bidding processes for printing and mailing costs. Even more encouraging is that revenues are already (at the end of this fiscal year) up to what we had projected for three years out, enabling us to move faster towards our goals of expanded publicity (to bring our publications to the notice of the field), additions of more titles, and increased access to our publications program.

Beyond these improvements in revenues, we have also benefited from very successful cost containment measures and even cuts, where we could make them without hurting member services. For instance, the large expenses involved in bringing committees together for twice-yearly meetings has been substantially reduced, for the foreseeable future, by a new policy that combines one annual face-to-face and one teleconference call meeting for each of the main divisions and committees. In addition, staff have identified some significant changes in operations over the last several years that save us thousands of dollars each year—these range from a more cost-effective health benefits program, to altered pre-registration arrangements, to new processes in membership and the Business Office that reduce staff costs. Without question, future success will depend in part on the ongoing oversight and careful cost containment now exercised by headquarters' staff. Our track record is very good on this account, however, and so we can focus most of our energies on the expansion of revenues that will enable the AHA to meet new needs of its members and the field.

As for the one-time expenditures that led to planned deficits in the past; four years ago Council adopted a policy of utilizing untapped resources in the portfolio in order to resituate the AHA to meet the future. We can put this decision in a larger context: the current Council decided last year to set aside 5 percent of the value of the portfolio every year to help meet our costs (both new capital costs and new operating costs). This was never done before.\* Had it been done, it would not have taken very many years of taking out the 5 percent to accomplish the goals we accomplished, instead, in three short years of improvements. Because it was not done, the money was taken all at once—and in this the timing was fortuitous, because it was also a period of up-market so that the impact on the portfolio was minimized (we had \$2 million in the account when we started; we now have \$3.6 million). While it is always better not to use money in the portfolio, so that it can earn additional money to add to the pot each year, the current Council has adopted a policy of steady, predictable withdrawals from the portfolio earnings to ensure the good operating budget health of the Association. This is not far removed from the earlier decision to draw on previously untapped earnings to provide the Association with new and critically important capacities. In any case, the best news about all of this is that we do, now, have a policy that will enable the AHA to increase the size of its portfolio while having a predictable and stable source of income to add to its operating budget, and through which it can tackle new challenges as they arise.

Finally, the capital expenditures: Until the fiscal year just concluded, the AHA did not have a systematic way to handle a capital budget. We have now put in place long-term projections to ensure timely and well-budgeted maintenance, replacement, and upgrades. We are

---

\* Instead, a portion of earned income was utilized through direct interest, and dividends payment. These generally were much less than the 5 percent now taken.

saving toward a depreciation allowance that will give us much more financial flexibility in the face of future technological and other capital budget demands. Once again, our progress in four short years leaves us much to be pleased with.

Taken all in all, the report for this year, my last report as executive director, is an encouraging one. I would like to take the opportunity to note that, within the policy guidelines established by Council and the programmatic initiatives defined by the divisions and committees, much of our extraordinary success in expanding the reach of the Association must be credited to the very good staff at headquarters. It is they who consistently seek out opportunities for collaboration, and pursue the best ways to implement the policy goals articulated by elected officials, even after those officers' terms have concluded. Staff who have worked for the Association for many years have demonstrated new creativity, learned new tasks, and achieved significant cost-savings to make the innovations possible. Newer staff members have brought to the building sets of skills and enthusiasms required by the new infrastructure, and these have added immeasurably to the mix. As noted last year, the Association accomplishes an extraordinary range of work with a lower staff-to-membership ratio than any comparable scholarly association. It has been a great pleasure working with these great-hearted and talented people.

What the headquarters staff, elected officers, and hard-working divisions and committees have accomplished makes it clear that the AHA has the capacity to offer significant leadership to the field in intellectual, professional, and technological matters. I wish it well in the future.

## **Annual Report of the Professional Division**

by Carla Rahn Philips (University of Minnesota),  
Vice President of the Professional Division

This is my last annual report as vice president of the Professional Division. A broad overview of the division's activities in 1998 has already appeared in the annual meeting *Program*, prepared by the AHA headquarters staff. Here I will simply touch on some of the central and ongoing concerns of the division. During the three years that I served as vice president, 33 complaints (by my count) were brought to the division. Ten of these complaints involved allegations of plagiarism, another 13 dealt with allegations of unprofessional conduct of various sorts, and the remaining 10 alleged unfair hiring practices. We declined to hear 14 of the complaints, based on the criteria in the AHA's *Statement on Standards*. My annual report for 1997 discussed various composite scenarios based on those 14 declined complaints (*Perspectives*, April 1998), explaining why they did not meet the standards for a full review. Besides the cases filed formally, many individuals discussed potential complaints with me informally by phone or e-mail. That remains an option for members who want an outside opinion, and it can often be more useful and faster than filing a formal complaint. For example, an allegation of unfair hiring practices may be impossible to demonstrate from the written record, as required by the AHA's *Statement on Standards*, and a job candidate may feel too vulnerable to bring a formal complaint. Instead, once alerted, the vice president for the Professional Division may be able to make inquiries or even resolve a matter informally without mentioning the job candidate.

Dissatisfaction with the job market is presumably more widespread than the number of formal and informal complaints would indicate, based on the "war stories" told among job candidates. At the January meeting in Washington, the division once again sponsored a "Mock Interview" session to give job candidates practical advice about how to present themselves in interviews. I also stopped by the waiting room for the Job Register interviews several times, simply to observe. The physical facilities were arranged about as efficiently as they could be, and the local graduate students staffing the registration desk and the waiting room seemed committed to being as helpful as possible to the candidates who filed in and out. Nonetheless, improvements can be made even to the most efficient operation, and the stress inherent in the hiring process can magnify every perceived flaw. If you have suggestions as to how the Job Register could be improved, please send your ideas to the Professional Division or to Robert Townsend at AHA headquarters. Suggestions will be particularly helpful if they come from recent participants in the Job Register, both interviewers and job candidates.

Last fall, the Professional Division reviewed and edited the AHA's guidelines for the hiring process, adding several points about on-campus interviews and contract negotiations. Our aim was to make the guidelines as clear and comprehensive as possible, although obviously we could not cover every contingency. Last fall the division also began to review the statement on standards regarding the hiring process. The statement deals only with open searches; it does not even acknowledge practices known as "spousal hires," "special opportunity hires," and "administrative transfers," which are relatively common in the profession these days. To remedy this lapse, it is likely that the division will consider the full range of hiring as it continues its review. The AHA Council and the Professional Division continue to view the job market and the annual meeting's Job Register among their highest priorities.

The AHA also continues to monitor the use of part-time and temporary faculty. (The phrase "adjunct faculty" is often used to describe them, but that category is too general and ambiguous to be useful.) The Professional Division developed a set of guidelines, approved by Council in May 1998, outlining good practices to be followed when part-time and temporary faculty are hired to teach history. The guidelines aimed to integrate part-time and temporary

faculty into the intellectual and administrative life of the hiring institutions, for the benefit of all concerned. Our point of departure in developing the guidelines was the closing document from the conference on part-time and temporary faculty (a.k.a. “adjunct”) cosponsored by the AHA and held in September 1997. The AHA continues its partnership with the other organizations who sponsored that important meeting. In the past several years, the division has sponsored the discussion of issues crucial to the profession. Whenever possible, we organized a panel on a specific issue at the AHA’s annual meeting, continued the discussion at the luncheon of department chairs during the meeting, and later arranged for the publication of related articles in *Perspectives*. The issues we focused on were the downsizing of departments and graduate programs (1997), tenure and post-tenure review (1998), part-time and temporary faculty (1998), the job market and the production of PhDs (1999), and faculty governance and unionization (1999). Further discussion of these issues has taken place on the e-mail listserv established for department chairs by the AHA.

The five-person division changes its identity each year, due to the staggered terms of the members. AHA staff support by Sharon K. Tune and Robert Townsend in Washington provides the continuity and paperwork that the division needs to function, and I am grateful as always for their help. In past years I have thanked division members as their terms ended. This year I am very pleased to thank Gail Savage, whose term ended in January. Gail provided exemplary service to the division, taking special interest in the concerns of part-time and temporary faculty and in our liaison with the AHA’s Task Force on Graduate Education. She also served as contributing editor of *Perspectives* for professional issues. In that capacity, she took responsibility for highlighting topics that the division had identified for special attention. As Gail and I leave the division, its work will proceed under the leadership of Barbara D. Metcalf (University of California at Davis), with continuing members Leila Fawaz (Tufts University), James Grossman (Newberry Library), and Marilyn Young (NYU) representing Council, and newly-elected member Charles Zappia (San Diego Mesa College). They and Council will decide what issues the division will address as the AHA enters the new millennium, and I wish them all the best in that endeavor.



## Annual Report of the Research Division

By Stanley N. Katz (Princeton University),  
Vice President of the Research Division

In 1998 the division concerned itself with the entire range of issues assigned to it—oversight of the *American Historical Review*, oversight of the Program Committee for the annual meeting of the Association, oversight of new prizes and research grants, and oversight of the Association's advocacy activities. We met twice during the year—by telephone in early October (as part of the AHA's attempt to cut back meeting expenses) and in person in early March. For the most part, we kept in touch through our divisional listserv. And, it is important to say, we accomplished what we did through the superb guidance and support of our AHA staff liaison, Linn Shapiro.

This year the *AHR* has taken precedence in our activities. Most important, the division is charged with the periodic review of the editor of the *AHR*—currently, Michael Grossberg. President Joe Miller appointed a review committee composed, according to the Association constitution, of the Vice President for Research (myself); a member of the Indiana University history department (Alexander Rabinowitch); and a former member of the editorial board (Fred Cooper, University of Michigan). Our committee met with the *AHR* staff in Bloomington and sent letters of inquiry to present and former members of the staff and editorial board. We unanimously recommended Grossberg's reappointment, a recommendation endorsed by the division and by the Council of the Association. In brief, our findings were that not only was the *Review* flourishing as a learned journal, but that the staff and business of the *AHR* are being managed in an exemplary manner. Grossberg has emphasized the catholicity of the journal, with articles spanning the entire range of time and place, and accessible to historians of all specialties. He has also introduced new sections to encourage discussion and engagement of historians in the major dilemmas of writing history.

I am delighted to say that Grossberg has now accepted reappointment for another five-year term as editor.

Among the other issues concerning the *AHR* that have occupied my time and that of the division is the digitization of the journal. As I have reported earlier, we have been discussing the possibility of an online journal for the past two years, and have appointed an ad hoc committee (under my chairmanship) to address the problem. The committee, with Michael Grossberg's concurrence, has recommended that the *AHR* plan to publish a simultaneous electronic version of the journal as soon as possible. We had hoped that might be next year, but it now seems likely that 2001 will be the inaugural year for the e-*AHR*. I hasten to say that there is no intention of discontinuing the print journal in the foreseeable future. The initial version of the e-*AHR* will be essentially a digital version of the analog journal, but it will of course be fully searchable and it will be accessible electronically anywhere. We are still studying a variety of options for producing and distributing the electronic journal; it is likely that final decisions will be made in the next several months. Eventually, the e-journal will provide access to image and sound, links, and all of the other features available in the new format. This will be a truly new era for one of the world's premier historical journals.

The division has also spent a great deal of time on a number of electronic projects currently under development either by the AHA or in partnership with other organizations. Perhaps the most exciting of these are the new Gutenberg-e prizes that President Bob Darnton has pioneered, and for which he has secured substantial funding from the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation. He has reported separately on the project, so I will say only that we will be awarding several prize fellowships each year for distinguished dissertations in selected historical fields so that the dissertations can be prepared for publication in digital form. Darnton and I also serve on

an American Council of Learned Societies committee that is developing a project to publish historical monographs in electronic form. This project should be realized by this summer.

The division has also represented the AHA in the Historical Studies Distribution Network project in association with the Association of Research Libraries, several university presses, and several other historical societies. This is a project that was pioneered by our former executive director, Sandy Freitag—as was the Building Blocks project, in conjunction with the National Initiative for a Networked Cultural Heritage. Both projects are attempts to think our way into the electronic environment for historical work and to begin building the platforms historians will require to work in that new world.

The other major project the division has engaged in has been one in collaboration with the Community College Humanities Association and the Library of Congress. This project will attempt to assist community college faculty in training to teach world history, as well as historians around the world to think through strategies and prepare materials for teaching the subject. The AHA co-chairs of this project, for which we expect to receive funding shortly, are Renate Bridenthal (Brooklyn College, CUNY) and Jerry Bentley (University of Hawaii at Manoa).

It goes without saying that one of the most important responsibilities of the division is to work with the chairs of the program committees for the several upcoming annual meetings. We work with the chairs to recommend new members of the committee to Council. This is a crucial and difficult task, since a small committee must represent a wide variety of interests in order to ensure that the resulting program truly represents the wishes of the primary constituencies of the Association. We were especially pleased with the work of the Program Committee chaired this past year by John Voll (Georgetown University) and co-chaired by Gary Kulik (Winterthur Museum), and look forward to working with Michael Bernstein (University of California at San Diego) and Barbara Hanawalt (University of Minnesota) on next year's program and committee. The division tried to be attentive to complaints about the character and structure of the annual meeting program, for inevitably some groups feel excluded and many members dislike aspects of the program. But with only around 140 sessions on the "official" program, hard choices must be made. We welcome comments from the membership about the program at any time.

Finally, the division works actively with Page Putnam Miller and the National Coordinating Committee on issues that affect history and historians in the public world. Page continues to do a superb job, and for the most part the division serves as little more than a conduit from Page to the Council. But we frequently write letters to public officials or make calls upon them when we feel that the interests of historians or the historical record are at stake. We also occasionally join other groups in litigating on behalf of history and/or historians. Alas, many of the lawsuits in recent years have been against the National Archives, and in some cases we have prevailed. But our larger concern is to work with public agencies on behalf of history, and this year we have made a major effort to work with the archives and John Carlin, the archivist of the United States. Page Miller, Joe Miller, and I called upon Carlin this summer, and Carlin made an excellent presentation at the annual meeting in Washington, D.C., in January 1999. Both sides are committed to working more closely with one another.

Before concluding, I should mention that the division has worked very hard to construct a document concerning "best practices" in historical research across the range of institutions in the academy. That document is now out for comment to the Council and we hope to publish it in a forthcoming issue of *Perspectives*. We hope that it will provoke widespread discussion across the profession about the state of historical research and various proposals to improve the range and character of historical research. We would be pleased to hear from the membership about this or any other matter within the scope of the Research Division.

## **Annual Report of the Teaching Division**

*by Leon Fink (University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill),  
Vice President of the Teaching Division*

The Teaching Division (TD) has enjoyed a stimulating and productive year, launching a major new initiative in K–12 collaborative education as well as advancing a host of inherited projects.

With help from the affiliated societies and an enthusiastic response from many AHA members, the division has sought to highlight and improve institutional connections among historians and social studies teachers. Following continuing if politically contentious efforts to influence state-level adoption of history-based sets of social studies standards for the nation's public schools, the TD has adopted a “bottom-up” emphasis on direct contacts among the far-flung members of the larger history/social studies community. Programatically, the TD has taken a multipronged approach to this goal. Based on responses to an appeal in *Perspectives*, we have first sought to create a database (where none has existed before) of ongoing initiatives in collaborative education; thus far we have identified a fascinating array of several dozen projects aimed at social studies teachers centered in museums, archival centers, and independent schools, as well as university and college history departments. The next step is to incorporate these findings into the AHA's web site to allow for maximum exchange of information.

Beyond publicizing current collaborative programs, the TD wants to support such educational efforts, strengthen their design and content, and generally encourage a working definition of professional community among historians that includes social studies teachers. The second tangible innovation in this direction, therefore, has been creation of the teacher-oriented “teaching workshop” sessions at the annual meeting (beginning with two sessions at the 1999 meeting—“The Politics and Culture of the 1930s” and “Ibn Battuta and the Cosmopolitan Fourteenth Century”). Aimed at attracting a heterogeneous audience of non-specialists, the workshop sessions invited distinguished scholar/teachers to model their teaching methods in an interactive format centered on interpretation of selected “texts” in their field.

The TD is in the planning stages of two other initiatives on the collaborative educational front. A breakfast meeting cosponsored by the National History Education Network (NHEN) during the 1999 annual meeting brought together directors of collaborative projects to assess their needs, including creation of a new network within the association and possible design of other collaborative-centered sessions at the annual meeting. In addition, the TD and NHEN are moving toward a significant grant application to support a model collaborative program at select institutions across the country.

In other business, the TD all but completed decisions on several publication projects. The division approved publication—in paper and Web versions—of Terry Seip's pamphlet on graduate student teacher education, which is in the final stages of editorial revision. Three pamphlets were sent to the AHA's Publications Advisory Committee to be considered for publication: *Teaching Innovations: Teaching to Think Historically*, *Audiovisuals in the Teaching of History*, and *Teaching Innovations: World and Global History*.

Beginning in 2001 the TD will sponsor Certificates of Distinction for outstanding textbooks at the secondary level. World history textbooks will alternate with U.S. history textbooks every other year. In accord with past Council findings, the criteria for judging textbooks will include factual coverage, historical habits of mind, critical thinking, use of primary documents and variety of historical evidence, pre-publication inclusion of active teachers and research historians in editorial review procedures, and appropriateness to existing school settings. The prize committee will consist of secondary and postsecondary teachers with specialties in the designated prize categories. The TD has asked AHA affiliates to consider cosponsoring the prize.

On other matters, in response to an invitation from the Carnegie Foundation for the Advancement of Teaching, the TD has authorized Noralee Frankel to participate in the initial stages of a major Carnegie effort to enhance the status of academic work on student learning and teaching. Additionally, the TD happily notes the progress of the AHA/National Endowment for the Humanities project, "Teaching and Learning in the Digital Age: Reconceptualizing the Introductory Survey Course," a project under way since summer 1998 in three regional centers across the country. The division also salutes the achievement of the November 1998 Pittsburgh Conference on History Learning and Teaching, a meeting coordinated by former TD vice president Peter Stearns that brought new perspectives to bear from both inside and outside the discipline on current issues in historical education. (See page 1 of this issue for a report on the conference.)

To institutionalize an arrangement that has served the TD remarkably well over the past few years, the TD sought and received approval from the Council to authorize participation of the *Perspectives* contributing editor for the "Teaching" column in the TD's annual meeting and conference calls.

Finally, the TD expresses continuing appreciation to Noralee Frankel and Frances Lilly for exceptional professional guidance. We also wish to thank Sandy Freitag for her many distinguished efforts in support of outreach from the AHA to the larger historically minded public during her tenure as executive director.

# Annual Report of the *American Historical Review* Editor

1997-1998

By Michael Grossberg (Indiana University), Editor

August 10, 1998

I have completed my third year as editor of the *American Historical Review*. I am pleased to report that the journal continues to be produced in a timely manner and, I hope, continues to speak to the interests of the members of this Association and other historians. I am also pleased to report that two recent *AHR* articles have won prizes: Lizabeth Cohen's October 1996 article, "From Town Center to Shopping Center: The Reconfiguration of Community Marketplaces in Postwar America," received the Urban History Association's prize for the Best Journal Article in Urban History published in 1996, and Robert Moeller's article from the same issue, "War Stories: The Search for a Usable Past in the Federal Republic of Germany," won the prize of the Conference Group in Central Europe as the best article in the field for the years 1994-1996. I also want to use this report to reiterate that two goals dominate my approach to the editorship of the *AHR*: maintaining the journal's tradition of rigorous editorial and production standards, and fulfilling the journal's distinctive mandate to publish significant scholarship that engages the common concerns of all historians. The *AHR* staff and I tried to achieve these goals in a number of ways during the last year.

Two particular policies that we have worked on are worth noting. First, we have continued our efforts to enhance the journal's coverage of contemporary historical scholarship by actively soliciting article manuscripts and books for review in underrepresented fields of study. The submission patterns of articles and books reveals a slow but steady success in overcoming the belief of many historians that the *AHR* is a journal primarily for historians of modern western Europe and North America. Most notably, manuscript submissions and acceptances and reviewable books in Asian history, African, and Latin American history have increased. However, few historians of medieval Europe, the Middle East, Asia before the modern era, and early modern and modern Europe outside of France, Britain, and Germany send us their work. I have commissioned review essays and forum essays in many of the underrepresented fields to encourage historians engaged in studying those topics to think of publishing in the *AHR*. And second, after a series of discussions among the *AHR* staff and Board of Editors, we will implement a new book review classification scheme in the February 1999 issue. The new scheme is the final part of my attempt to update the journal's basic policies, which began in 1996 with revisions of the *AHR*'s article and book review guidelines. The goal of reclassification is to increase the effectiveness of the book review section for all historians by making it more logical and comprehensive. We hope as well that the new classification system will help achieve the *AHR*'s larger mission of speaking across the specialties of history by encouraging historians to read across traditional boundaries and by contributing to discussions about how to organize historical scholarship. I should add that there will continue to be a topical table of contents of the book reviews in each issue.

Over the course of the last year, we have also pursued a number of specific initiatives. Gina Doglione, our production manager, has redesigned our web page. In addition to making it more attractive and easier to use, she has added a searchable index of *AHR* tables of contents. The *AHR* web page can be found at: <http://www.indiana.edu/~ahr>. In an effort to ease communication we have also changed our basic e-mail address to [ahr@indiana.edu](mailto:ahr@indiana.edu). And we have revised our copyright forms for articles and created new ones for book reviews. The forms are posted on our web site. In the June 1998 issue, we began a new *AHR* feature: *Forum Essays*. The major innovation is in terms of commentaries. Periodically we will publish an essay that we think addresses a particularly critical subject and that is written in a manner likely to spur debate and

publish it with a call for comments from readers rather than commissioning commentaries. We will then pick the most trenchant three or four comments, send them to the author for a response, and publish the comments and response together in the following issue. We plan to use the June issue for this format because it gives us the largest production time between issues (June to October) and thus the greatest opportunity to evaluate comments and produce the final copy. The first essay in the series was an article by Omer Bartov entitled "Defining Enemies, Making Victims: Germans, Jews, and the Holocaust." I do want to note, though, that we will also continue to publish the more conventional *Forums*. Finally, we continue to explore the possibility of taking the *AHR* on-line. AHA vice president for research Stanley Katz appointed a subcommittee to study the issue, and ongoing discussions of the issue are being conducted among the *AHR* staff and Board of Editors. A decision should be reached during spring 1999. However, I do want to stress that guiding these deliberations is the assumption that changing methods of distribution should not alter but only enhance the fundamental mission of the journal to publish and review historical scholarship that speaks across the discipline to the common interests of historians.

It has been possible to publish the journal in a timely and skillful manner and to pursue these various other activities because of the skill and dedication of the *AHR* staff and Board of Editors and the support of the officers of the AHA. Beyond the consistently high level of their daily work, Assistant Editors Moureen Coulter and Allyn Roberts have made major contributions to the development of recent initiatives in the journal. And Associate Editor Jeffrey Wasserstrom has worked very hard and very successfully on diversifying and enhancing the *Forums* and *Review Essays*. There have, though, also been several staff changes over the last year. A major turnover occurred among our graduate student editorial assistants. Matthew N. Vosmeier and Stephen Toth completed their three-year terms and are now completing their dissertations; Julia Cummings and Lynn Sargeant left the staff after receiving major fellowships to conduct dissertation research in Mexico and Russia, respectively. Each of these students made major contributions to the journal. They have been replaced by Margaret Puskar-Pasewicz, Sean Quinlan, Jude Richter, and Kelly Tucker.

I have also been very fortunate to work with a distinguished and dedicated group of historians on the journal's Board of Editors. Time and again I have turned to them individually and collectively for advice on manuscripts and journal policy. They have always responded with thoughtful and useful advice. Two members of the board completed their terms of office in May: Jane Caplan and Richard Wortman. Both of them served the journal with distinction. At my request the AHA Council authorized an increase of the size of the Board of Editors from 10 to 12 members. The intent of the increase is to better represent the range of contemporary historical scholarship in both methods and subjects. Accordingly, four new members joined the Board last June: R. Stephen Humphreys (Middle East/World History); Margaret Jacob (historical method/early modern Europe); Robert G. Moeller (modern Europe); Maria Todorova (eastern Europe).

I would also like to thank the members of the AHA Council, Research Division, and Washington staff for their invaluable assistance and support over the last year. In particular I would like to acknowledge the hard work by Robert Townsend of the AHA staff, who performs many of the critical tasks that ensure the timely production and distribution of the journal as well as its financial support. I would also like to thank Vice President for Research Katz for his steadfast support of the journal and his leadership in addressing the issues of its electronic future. And I would like to thank departing Executive Director Sandria Freitag for her advice and support. Most important, I would like to express my gratitude to the countless historians who have helped produce the *AHR* over the last year by evaluating manuscripts, reviewing books, and offering us their ideas about the journal. Without their assistance, the journal could not be published nor could its editors aspire to achieve its mission.

## Report of the 1998 AHA Program Committee

*By Sara Evans and Ann Waltner (University of Minnesota)  
1998 Program Committee Co-chairs*

The 1998 AHA annual meeting in Seattle was attended by 3,658 people, and offered a record number of official sessions. Detailed evaluations by session chairs of 76 sessions (49 percent) confirm that this was a very exciting and intellectually stimulating meeting.

The opening plenaries established two themes. Natalie Zemon Davis (Princeton University) and Stuart Schwartz (Yale University) spoke to the benefits and pleasures of doing comparative history and to the unexpected connections that crop up when one trains oneself to look for them. The second plenary on the role of national museums offered a stellar, international lineup. The presentations by Cheng Bo Feng (Nankai' University) and Alissandra Cummins (Barbados Museum and Historical Society) were powerful explorations of the kinds of public conversations—and the political constraints—that national museums address. Unfortunately, two of the panelists, John Kani (Market Theater Company, Johannesburg) and Spencer Crew (National Museum of American History, Smithsonian Institution), were unable to come precisely because of the demands placed on their institutions.

The committee's active effort to encourage and facilitate comparative sessions was resoundingly successful. We set out to encourage genuinely comparative panels by publishing guidelines in *Perspectives* and by offering assistance to people who came to us with embryonic ideas. We insisted that comparative sessions seriously engage issues of comparison and that the roles of the chair and commentator were critical to their success. As a result of these efforts, the 1998 program had an unprecedented number of comparative panels, and evaluations repeatedly noted that the sessions had been constructed thoughtfully and that the commentators effectively drew together the comparative themes suggested by the papers. Audiences clearly responded as well, engaging in active, sometimes vigorous, discussions. We conclude from this success that future program committees should continue to provide encouragement and guidelines to people interested in comparative sessions. The possibility of conversation across the boundaries of all the traditional historical fields is unique to the AHA annual meeting.

Evaluations (by session chairs to whom the forms had been mailed) were extremely positive: 31 of the 76 evaluations (or more than 40 percent) were excellent in every respect, prompting such comments as "One of the best sessions I have witnessed." and "I have rarely enjoyed a session at the AHA as much." Another 33 evaluations referred to very good sessions which engendered "lively discussions" despite some imperfections such as overlong papers or a presenter absent because of illness. Seven sessions appeared to have been successful but not thrilling, and only two sessions were described in language that suggested they were genuinely disappointing. In one of those cases, the papers simply did not deliver what their titles had promised, and in another a presenter failed to submit a paper or show up for the panel and gave no advance warning or excuse. Although such unprofessional behavior is distressing, it appears to have been extremely rare.

Evaluations generally praised the facilities, which were unusual for the AHA in that they were not primarily hotel-based. Although most sessions were well attended (attendance ranged from 5 to 150, and most sessions were between 20 and 40), those that were small generally elicited explanations focused on program time slots. In fact, every single time slot, with the exception of Friday afternoon, had disadvantages. The most serious problems, however, were on Sunday morning when there can be no doubt that there were some sessions with small turnouts because people from the East coast tended to leave early. The program committee had anticipated this somewhat by scheduling fewer sessions on Sunday than in other time periods. In the future, we would recommend that there be only one Sunday morning session—especially for meetings

scheduled on the West Coast. It is important to note that the committee was cognizant of its strict instructions to place several highly popular sessions on Sunday. Indeed, we were careful not to match “popular” sessions with “popular” time slots. Our greatest concern was to avoid placing sessions on similar topics and drawing the same audience in competition with each other. Unfortunately, we have subsequently learned that despite our most careful planning, there were several cases of just this problem. This is probably insurmountable, given the crosscutting nature of intellectual interests at the annual meeting-time, geography, methodology, and subject matter. But we urge continued attention to the problem.

The AHA needs a program that speaks to the profession as a whole, drawn from our enormously varied interests and focuses. It needs regularly to present the greatest thinkers in our profession. At the same time, it should also regularly give voice to the most promising younger scholars, whose work may be shaping the historiography that is just emerging. The health of the discipline depends on our ability to keep the conversation going between newer and older fields and methods, and between historians whose priority is scholarship and those whose priority is teaching. Indeed, teaching sessions continue to be among the best attended. We must continue to balance sessions from which teachers in high schools and community colleges can benefit with sessions that pursue specific historical questions in esoteric detail.

In recent years a very large number of graduate students and brand new PhDs have been on the program. Some members of the AHA find this to be troubling. Many of the very best proposals that we received came from graduate students—in part because they were willing and eager to make the case for the importance of their work and for the conception of the panel as a whole, and in part simply because they are doing stellar work. We had fewer proposals from more senior scholars than we would have liked, no doubt in part because the career incentives for senior scholars to present papers at a meeting are much lower than they are for junior scholars. In addition, in some cases, established scholars did not articulate the coherence of panels or the arguments of papers as well as they could have, perhaps assuming that we would read between the lines and accept their papers because of work they had done in the past. We could not and did not accept panels on the basis of anything but the proposals we have in hand. The Association should continue to encourage senior scholars, as their presence is important to the conference as a whole.

Additional criticism came to the committee from people whose proposals were rejected. Understandably, many of them believed in the worthiness of their proposals. Some went further and asserted that only blind prejudice and favoritism could have resulted in a rejection. Yet as best we can tell, sessions in all fields were accepted in rough proportion to the numbers submitted. As a committee, we reminded ourselves regularly of the need to be inclusive and to pay special attention to underrepresented fields such as diplomatic and military history. We strongly urge those who have been underrepresented to submit proposals and to take an active role in the shaping of the program.

It was a humbling and gratifying experience for us to see the depth and range of our profession. The committee labored long and hard (and with good humor) to assemble a program that we, and the Association, can be proud of. We would like to close by thanking our committee—Charles Ambler (University Of Texas at El Paso), Lonnie Bunch (National Museum of American History Smithsonian Institution), Joan Cadden (University of California at Davis), John Chasteen (University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill), Paula Findlen (Stanford University), Eric Rothschild (Scarsdale, N.Y., High School), Rosalyn Terborg-Perm (Morgan State University), John Voll (Georgetown University), and Eric Weitz (St. Olaf College)—and the staff of the AHA, especially Sharon K. Tune and Sandria B. Freitag.



# Report of the AHA 1998 Nominating Committee

by: Lillie Johnson Edwards (Drew University), Chair, 1998 Nominating Committee

On behalf of the Nominating Committee, I am pleased to report the results of the 1998 election for AHA offices. (Elected candidates are indicated with an asterisk.) A total of 3,237 votes were cast.

## **President** (one-year term)

**\*Robert Darnton**, Princeton University (early modern Europe, 18<sup>th</sup>-century France, history of the book, anthropology and cultural) 2,500

## **President-Elect** (one-year term)

**\*Eric Foner**, Columbia University (19<sup>th</sup>-century American, American political culture; African American, American radical and reform movements) 1,839

**Gordon S. Wood**, Brown University (colonial/Revolutionary/early Republic America) 1,286

## **Vice-President, Professional Division** (three-year term)

**\*Barbara D. Metcalf**, University of California at Davis (South Asia, comparative, Islamic studies) 1,542

**Peter Stansky**, Stanford University (modern Britain) 1,363

## **Council Members** (three-year term)

### *Place 1:*

**Robert C. Ritchie**, The Huntington (early America, maritime, early modern England) 1,325

**\*Linda Shopes**, Pennsylvania Historical and Museum Commission (late 19<sup>th</sup>- and 20<sup>th</sup>-century U.S. social and cultural, public and community, oral history) 1,468

*Place 2:*

**Jean H. Quataert**, State University of New York at Binghamton (German women nationalism and state building, modern global) 1,131

**\*Vicki L. Ruiz**, Arizona State University (Chicano, U.S. women, U.S.-Mexico border, 20<sup>th</sup>-century American West/labor/immigration studies) 1,620

**Professional Division** (three-year term)

**Gary W. Reichard**, California State University at Long Beach (recent U.S., U.S. political, American immigration and ethnicity) 1,173

**\*Charles Anthony Zappia**, San Diego Mesa College (U.S. labor, social, ethnic) 1,330

**Research Division** (three-year term)

**\*Richard L. Greaves**, Florida State University (early modern England and Scotland, Restoration Ireland, world) 1,388

**Robert A. Rosenstone**, California Institute of Technology (cultural, modern, history in visual media) 1,276

**Teaching Division** (three-year term)

**Bryan F. Le Beau**, Creighton University (pre-Civil War American cultural and religious) 1,115

**\*Maxine Neustadt Lurie**, Seton Hall University (colonial America, American Revolution, New Jersey) 1,392

**Committee on Committees** (three-year term)

**Gil Joseph**, Yale University (Mexico and Central America since Independence, agrarian, legal, U.S.-Latin American relations) 1,109

**\*William B. Taylor**, University of California at Berkeley (colonial period Latin America and modern Mexico, American representations of Mexico, peasant studies, church and religion) 1,445

**Nominating Committee** (three-year terms)

*Place 1:*

**\*Allison Blakely**, Howard University (modern Europe, Russia, comparative populism, African diaspora) 1,799

**Maghan Keita**, Villanova University (African intellectual and medieval, African American, world, medieval, historiography, cultural criticism) 738

*Place 2:*

**\*Donald Teruo Hata Jr.**, California State University at Dominguez Hills (modern Japan, Asian-Pacific American, U.S. social/cultural, history of education) 1,328

**Anand A. Yang**, University of Utah (South Asia, China, Asian American, comparative, social and cultural, world) 1,168

*Place 3:*

**Brian P. Levack**, University of Texas at Austin (early modern Britain and Europe, legal) 1,210

**\*Sara T. Nalle**, William Paterson University (early modern Spain, early modern European cultural and religious) 1,392

The total number of ballots cast was 3,237. Forty-eight ballots arrived after the November 1 deadline and could not be counted. Survey and Ballot Systems, Inc., of Eden Prairie, Minnesota, scanned the ballots and tabulated the results. Only 27 ballots needed to be hand counted. Some voters registered their opinions about candidates, and the committee will review these criticisms and comments at its next meeting in February 1999. The committee felt strongly that the final vote should not be published in *Perspectives*; it will be available in the AHA's *Annual Report* and reported to the Business Meeting.

The Nominating Committee met in Washington, D.C., from January 31 to February 2, 1998. This was the second year that the committee had met from Saturday to Monday. Although some telephone calls had to be made by the chair after the meeting had adjourned, the new schedule allowed us to reach nominees more easily. We elected to continue the new schedule for the 1999 meeting, which is tentatively scheduled to be held on February 6-8, 1999. The chair of the 1999 Nominating Committee will be Leo Spitzer (Dartmouth College).

Every year the Nominating Committee issues several appeals to the membership for nominees. In addition to soliciting nominees in the letter published in *Perspectives*, the chair solicited names directly from the present officers, who responded enthusiastically. We were very successful in having a large group of nominees and vitae provided by the membership and committee members. The committee felt strongly that AHA members should know how much it appreciates their nominations, especially self-nominations. At least three of the 1998 nominees were self-nominated. We also retained and reviewed the vitae of members whose names had been submitted to the committee in previous years, but who had not been selected to stand for office. The process of identifying nominees was also improved with the availability of the AHA membership database at our deliberations. The major impediment to the process continues to be the search for home telephone numbers, which were often missing from the vitae, nominations, and the AHA database. Perhaps most disappointing for the committee was the discovery that some of the people whom we wanted to nominate were not members of the AHA, or they had allowed their memberships to lapse.

As much as we appreciate those who sent in nominations or indicated their own desire to serve, the committee needs more nominations from the membership. While the Association tries to assure that the Nominating Committee is broadly representative of the membership, nominations from the members play a critical role as the first step in defining and implementing the AHA's mission.

The second step in that process is the election. There was little difference in the level of participation this year (3,237 votes cast) and last year (3,292 votes cast). While the number of

votes cast during the past two years represents an improvement over the number of votes cast in 1996 (2,730), the committee continues to be concerned about the low rate of participation in the election process.

The Nominating Committee had hoped that the revised layout and content of the candidate biography would invite greater participation in the election. These changes included: (1) an introductory paragraph describing the nominating process; (2) a list of members currently serving on Council, divisions, and committees and a brief description of their duties; (3) a list of the abbreviations most often used in the biographies; (4) limits placed on the number of publications and awards listed in candidate biographies so that members could identify more clearly those items that candidates deemed to be the most important in their career and most relevant to the position which they sought; and (5) more space for the candidates' statements describing the relevance of their service and interests to the position for which they had been nominated. The candidates for president-elect were also asked to write a statement about the responsibilities, goals, and problems of the AHA and how they would use the presidency to address them. Members who wanted more details about any candidate could access the candidate's vita on the AHA web site.

The 1999 Nominating Committee will continue to discuss ways to improve the election process, including soliciting nominations, monitoring the effectiveness of the candidate biography booklet, and increasing the number of members who vote in the election. The chair of the committee will submit to the AHA office revisions to the "Manual of Policies and Procedures." As always, the committee welcomes members' comments, suggestions, and nominations. These should be sent to the 1999 chair, Leo Spitzer, in care of Sharon K. Tune, Assistant Director, AHA, 400 A St. SE, Washington, DC 200033889. E-mail: [stune@theaha.org](mailto:stune@theaha.org).

In its effort to understand the needs of the AHA and how those needs change from year to year, the Nominating Committee relied on the expert counsel of the executive director, Sandria B. Freitag. Her understanding of the Association's mission and goals brought clarity and focus to our deliberations. The Nominating Committee reports for the past several years have indicated how Sharon K. Tune has brought immaculate order to our very complex process. The 1998 committee adds its profound gratitude to her and other staff members of the AHA. I would also like to thank the eight other members of the committee and the members of the previous two Nominating Committees who gave me this opportunity to serve the profession. I am especially grateful for the spirit of congeniality that allowed us so effectively to complete the nominating process and so adeptly to respond to the challenge of improving the ballot.

## Minutes of the Council Meeting, January 8, 1998

The Council met in the Juniper Room of the Sheraton Seattle and Towers in Seattle, Washington, on Thursday, January 8, 1998. President Joyce Appleby called the meeting to order at 8:35 a.m. Present were: Ms. Appleby; Joseph C. Miller, president-elect; Caroline Walker Bynum, immediate past president; vice presidents Peter N. Stearns (Teaching Division), Carla Rahn Phillips (Professional Division) and Stanley N. Katz (Research Division); Council members Douglas Greenberg, Emily Hill, Colin Palmer, Barbara Ramusack, and David Trask; Sandria B. Freitag, executive director; Michael Grossberg, editor, *AHR*; Sharon K. Tune, assistant director, administration; Noralee Frankel, assistant director on women, minorities, and teaching; Randy Norell, controller; Robert Townsend, manager, information systems and communications; and Albert J. Beveridge III, legal counsel of the Association. Council member Cheryl Martin was unable to attend the meeting.

Ms. Appleby welcomed recently elected Council members attending as observers: incoming president-elect Robert Darnton; vice president-elect for teaching Leon Fink; and Council members-elect Nadine Hata and Marilyn Young.

**A. Approval of the minutes of the June 7-8, 1997 meeting:** Upon motion by Ms. Ramusack and second by Ms. Martin, the minutes were unanimously approved as submitted.

**B. Consent calendar:** Upon motion by Mr. Greenberg and second by Mr. Katz, the following items were unanimously approved under the consent calendar: 1. *Spencer Foundation-funded project on learning research and teaching history:* Accepting the Teaching Division's recommendation to endorse a conference on "Teaching and Learning as Epistemic Acts." The November 1998 "working" meeting precedes a second, larger conference to be held in the fall of 1999, and is funded by a \$25,000 Spencer Foundation grant. The goal for the conferences is to develop an agenda for ongoing history education reform and to create organizational and institutional structures that promote research, education, and publication initiatives in the field. The AHA will maintain financial oversight, while Mr. Stearns, Peter Seixas, University of British Columbia, and Sam Wineburg, University of Washington, will serve as conference convenors. Council members were provided with copies of the grant proposal, a list of invitees, and other information about the November 1998 meeting.

2. *Changes to the Statement on Standards of Professional Conduct:* Accepting the Professional Division's recommendations for editorial changes in the 1998 edition of the *Statement on Standards*. This edition will also incorporate an addition to the "Statement on Interviewing for Historical Documentation" approved at spring 1997 Council meeting.

3. *Recommendation for change to selection of Annual Meeting Program co-chair:*

Approving the Research Division's recommendation to modify Program Committee guidelines to state that the Program Committee chair and co-chair should be selected from different institutions and represent distinctively different fields.

4. *New copyright transfer forms used by AHR, Perspectives, and pamphlets (as appropriate):* Approving a revision of the Copyright Assignment Form for the *American Historical Review*, *Perspectives*, and, as appropriate AHA pamphlets. (See Attachment 1.)

5. *Revised AHA policy on exhibits, advertising, mailing list rentals, sales:* Approving the draft policy statement on exhibits, advertising, mailing list rentals, and sales. (See Attachment 2.)

6. *E-pamphlets ready for web-mounting:* Approving the Teaching Division's recommendation to publish on the AHA's website "Working Together to Strengthen History Teaching in Secondary Schools," by Kathleen Steeves, George Washington University, and "Power Tools for Teaching and Learning at an Urban Access University," by José Cuello, Wayne State University.

**C. President's Report:** Ms. Appleby reported that during Ms. Bynum's presidency, Council had modified and expanded the composition of the Executive Committee to include the presidents and vice presidents to better ensure that the profession's important issues would be discussed and brought to Council's attention. Since Article V, Section 3 of the AHA's constitution states that the Executive Committee is composed of the president, the president-elect, and not more than three other voting members of the Council, the most recently elected division vice president each year serves ex officio. Ms. Appleby also reported that Council continues to explore ways to integrate new members into Council's work, including the establishment of an ad hoc subcommittee chaired by Mr. Palmer to examine this and other issues. Following consideration of the subcommittee's recommendations, formal policies and procedures will be put into place. Noting the rotating nature of AHA elective offices, Ms. Appleby remarked that Council needed to provide continuity in setting Association priorities and maintaining initiatives. She reported that Ms. Bynum had agreed to brief newly elected members following the current Council session.

Ms. Appleby also reviewed several issues for discussion with Senator Slade Gorton, who would be Council's luncheon guest, expressing hope that Council could put forth the case for humanities. Members agreed that continued funding for the National Endowment for the Humanities was of primary concern, and Ms. Ramusack remarked that summer institutes for high school teachers had been popular and effective, and should be brought to Senator Gorton's attention. Mr. Katz commented that it was important for the senator not to view the profession as

a labor union, but to focus on citizens' access to history. Members agreed that broader issues of concern to the profession should be discussed, such as how new scholarship can be effectively disseminated.

**D. Report of the President-elect:** Mr. Miller presented the reports of the committees chaired by the president-elect: *1. Committee on Committee appointments:* Mr. Miller reported that the Committee on Committees (ConC) meets by teleconference each fall, and is responsible for appointments to twenty-seven committees and seven delegateships. He noted that approximately 130 AHA members serve each year, and that one-third of the committees' memberships rotate annually. He stated that the ConC depends on a very competent AHA staff to guide the five members through a two-stage process of collecting members' names for consideration during a mid-November conference call.

In reviewing the appointments recommended by the ConC, Mr. Palmer queried whether it was prudent that one individual should serve on two prize committees, noting that D. Barry Gaspar, Duke University, was currently serving on the Wesley-Logan Prize Committee and had been recommended to serve on the Kelly Prize Committee. Mr. Miller agreed that AHA policy prohibits a member from serving simultaneously in more than one position, and stated he would contact Mr. Gaspar. Staff was asked to contact an alternate to serve on the Kelly Prize Committee. Mr. Palmer also questioned area coverage represented by members of the Beveridge Award/Dunning Prize Committee, pointing out that only one of the five members wrote on hemispheric issues. Following discussion, members agreed to add a temporary sixth slot to the committee, and asked Mr. Palmer to identify historians for the committee's consideration. Mr. Miller agreed to provide AHA staff with a rank-ordered list of individuals to contact. Following additional discussion, Council unanimously affirmed the Committee on Committees' recommendations for filling vacancies on 1998 appointive committees with the two approved modifications.

*2. Committee on Affiliated Societies and activities:* Mr. Miller noted that he would chair the biennial meeting with affiliates scheduled on Friday, January 9, at 4:45 p.m. To avoid what can be contentious discussions, he stated that he had been working toward a mix of topics to reinforce AHA-affiliate connections. He stated that his own philosophy was that the AHA is a very different entity than its affiliates, which are predominately subject oriented. Mr. Miller stated that one of his goals was to move beyond annual meeting-related issues, and toward a discussion of productive partnerships and mutual support. He noted that the 1998 Annual Meeting program had been effective in this regard, and remarked that he had asked the 1999 Program Committee chair to speak at the meeting. In addition, Mr. Grossberg will report on the

“History Journals and the Electronic Future” conference. Mr. Miller stated that from this discussion, he hoped the AHA and its affiliates would begin to establish some important links. He noted that the AHA must resolve the “either/or” question--either belong to a specialty or to an “umbrella” organization--and begin to address what the AHA can do with and for affiliated societies. Ms. Phillips agreed, noting that the AHA does not often serve these groups, and that the organization should make greater efforts to do so. Ms. Appleby suggested that the AHA consider meeting with affiliates annually rather than biennially, noting more frequent meetings might allay anxieties as well as provide a forum for affiliates to express their concerns. Mr. Miller agreed that the AHA should work harder to stay abreast of changes in affiliate leadership and to keep in touch at several levels, noting however, that such efforts could be expensive in terms of staff time.

**E. Executive Director’s Report:** Ms. Freitag began by introducing the senior staff attending the meeting, briefly describing areas of responsibility. Turning to the report provided in members’ agenda books, Ms. Freitag stated that she had written it in two distinctive parts, although both clarified the relationships between the various units of the AHA and the “players” within each. She noted that the charts could also provide a review of the connections between the divisions and committees and the Council, and the critical linkages between them. She stated that the written report defined the various functions of each unit, described the connection among AHA projects, and outlined staff’s efforts to facilitate these efforts.

Ms. Freitag next brought a proposal for minor revisions to the taxonomy for the membership database. Introduced a little more than a year previously and based upon the system created for the third edition of the *Guide to Historical Literature*, the taxonomy was designed after extensive consultation with every committee in the AHA governance structure. She noted that the staff recommended keeping the general distribution of fields intact for about five years in order to have consistency of data and a track record on which to base more fundamental revisions. In the interim, Ms. Freitag recommended fine-tuning the taxonomy each year when a new supply of forms were ordered for the membership department. Noting the staff was at a stage that new forms should be ordered for the coming year, Ms. Freitag asked Mr. Townsend to discuss modifications proposed for 1998.

Mr. Townsend noted that the fields were “Areas of Specializations” that members checked on the reverse of their renewal forms. He stated that since space was already at a premium on the one-page form, Council would need to consider possible cuts to make room for additions. In discussing the proposed changes, Ms. Ramusack stated that although the list for Central Asia did seem extensive, she would recommend judicious cuts since the field was



growing. Mr. Townsend replied that staff recommended deleting geographic subcategories only. Mr. Palmer suggested rethinking other categories as well, citing the Americas (440) section, and usage of the terms “pre-contact” and “conquest,” as well as Africa and the Diaspora sections. Mr. Katz, observing that the taxonomy was magnificently old fashioned, suggested approving the proposed changes as a “patch” for the current year, and establishing a subcommittee to review. Mr. Miller asked members if they agreed. Ms. Freitag pointed out that the taxonomy was just over a year old, that the divisions and committees had provided extensive input, and that staff’s primary concern was that it would lose the ability to track trends and fields. She urged members to set a timeline when further modifications would be made. Ms. Ramusack remarked that as an umbrella organization, the AHA had an obligation to represent all fields, and Mr. Stearns encouraged members to reconsider other classifications as well, such as representation. Members agreed with Ms. Phillips that the AHA should decide for what purposes it was gathering the data, and that every field need not be listed.

Following additional discussion, and upon motion by Mr. Katz and second by Ms. Ramusack, members unanimously agreed that Mr. Miller should prepare for the Council’s Sunday session a proposal for a process to reorganize the taxonomy after the current classification had been in place for some time.

In the interim, Council unanimously agreed to accept the modifications proposed by Mr. Townsend, including the addition of peace history. The additions are: (1) Brazil (substituting for a redundant listing of “Latin America” in categories 462, 475, and 483); (2) Australasia and Oceania [315] (with subcategories for Australia [316], New Zealand [317], and Pacific Islands [318]), (3) Scandinavian Countries and Eastern Europe in the Early Modern, Twentieth Century, and Postwar periods (adding eight new categories); (4) Media, (5) Popular Culture, and (6) Peace. To create space on the one-page form for these additions, Council agreed to delete: (1) subcategories for Ancient Near East (101-107) and (2) geographic categories under Central Asia (203-205, 207-212, 214-217, 219-223).

**F. Finance Committee’s Report:** Ms. Appleby reported that the Finance Committee meets biannually, in the spring prior to the Council’s meeting and in December in conjunction with the annual Board of Trustees meeting. She noted that committee members had reviewed and accepted the 1996-97 audit at its early December meeting, and brought it to Council with a recommendation to approve the committee’s acceptance of the audit. Ms. Appleby brought four additional recommendations from the committee:

- (1) That the AHA should secure a \$100,000 mortgage to pay for previously incurred capital expenditures. These costs were incurred during the renovation of the AHA’s

headquarters building during the winter and spring of 1997, and were paid by borrowing from a line of credit.

- (2) That committees and divisions should meet periodically by teleconference, and that the estimated annual savings of approximately \$12,500 should service the mortgage. Ms. Phillips pointed out that contrary to earlier discussions, the Professional Division would participate. In addition, the Program Committee's planning meetings will be cut back to one meeting from the current two.
- (3) That in preparing the Association's annual budgets, staff should make provision for service of the mortgage and future capital expenditures as well as the current capital budget.
- (4) That the AHA should commit any surplus revenue to repay any borrowing incurred.

In discussing the committee's recommendation that divisions and committees should meet periodically by conference call, Ms. Appleby noted that the committee made the proposal following much debate, but that it had been the sense of the committee that specific cuts must be identified to service the mortgage, and that it would monitor impact and results very carefully. Mr. Stearns voiced concern, and suggested a "loss assessment" in two years specifically to address what had been lost in conducting committee and division business in this way. Ms. Appleby noted that it had not been the committee's intention to make a permanent change, rather to address interim budgetary concerns. Ms. Freitag noted that the Finance Committee had agreed that divisions should meet in person for both meetings of a new vice president's first year. This would mean that during the vice president's second and third years, one meeting each year would be via conference call. While acknowledging that this measure would result in significant financial savings, Mr. Greenberg stated that committee members realized other kinds of sacrifices would be made. Mr. Miller concurred, noting that the committee's first priority once Association's finances had improved was to restore cuts made by this proposal.

Mr. Palmer queried application of the proposal to the Program Committee, expressing concern that this committee worked quite hard and might have difficulty in completing its work during one meeting. He pointed out that now that the AHA is working to enhance the attractiveness of the Annual Meeting, such a move might be detrimental to that effort. Rather than reviewing effects of the proposal after two years, Mr. Palmer suggested a review after one year. Mr. Miller indicated this would be possible, noting that the Finance Committee would revisit next year and ask, "Do we need to continue for financial reasons? If so, should we continue?" Ms. Frankel suggested an evaluation on a case-by-case basis even after Council decides that normal meeting frequency can resume to determine the effectiveness of conference

call meetings. She noted that some divisions and committees may prefer to continue meeting once a year by conference call, especially as workload varies.

Mr. Trask queried if the Finance Committee had also discussed how to make teleconferences more effective. Ms. Phillips stated that she had been encouraged by the experience of the expanded Executive Committee, and noted that the six members of that committee had worked well together in setting agendas for Council meetings. She also discussed the importance of first developing group dynamics. Ms. Ramusack agreed, noting conversations progress more smoothly when participants recognized each other's voices or when they have worked together previously. She suggested encouraging chairs to assemble committees and divisions at the annual meeting to establish group dynamics and to hold initial "brainstorming" conversations about how the committee or division would operate. Mr. Katz also suggested that the Association try working better by e-mail than it had previously. Ms. Bynum noted, however, that while efficiency may be increased, if individuals are used to voice contact, e-mail could also be distancing. She encouraged an initial, open-ended telephone call to become acquainted and to introduce ideas and concerns.

Mr. Katz expressed concern that there would be pressure on divisions to meet during the Annual Meeting, and that this would present a new set of challenges considering the many other obligations people have during the meeting. Ms. Freitag concurred, noting whether or not a committee or division member would attend might depend upon his or her institution underwriting expenses. As a result, members from institutions with little or no travel funds could be excluded from committee and division service. Ms. Ramusack pointed out that meetings during the annual meeting would not substitute for a regular division or committee meeting, but would be "mixers" or get-acquainted meetings. She maintained that "brainstorming" of ideas was much more difficult by conference call. In summarizing Finance Committee and Council discussions, Ms. Appleby remarked that everyone agreed on the importance of face-to-face meetings and, while supporting the recommendation for budgetary reasons, also agreed that the Association would lose something by making this change.

Citing the cost of meeting in New York City in early December, Ms. Appleby also reported on Finance Committee discussions to move the date of its mid-year budgetary review meeting which have been held in conjunction with the annual meeting with the Board of Trustees. Ms. Tune pointed out that the AHA constitution requires the Finance Committee to meet at least once each year with the Board of Trustees to discuss investment policies and the financial needs of the Association. Following discussion, Council agreed that the committee should meet on the Wednesday evening preceding Council's Thursday session during the Annual Meeting. A

representative of the Finance Committee will attend the annual Board of Trustees meeting each December and serve as conduit for information to and from the Finance Committee and the Board of Trustees. The executive director and controller also will attend.

In discussing appointments to the Board, Mr. Katz suggested Charles Booth, who has served on the American Council of Learned Societies' investment retirement committee.

Following additional discussion, Council unanimously approved the Finance Committee's approval of the audit and the four recommendations outlined above.

**G. Advocacy Issues: 1. *National Initiative for Networked Cultural Heritage (NINCH)***

*Report:* Executive Director David Green joined the meeting to discuss intellectual property legislation and monitoring processes. He reported that NINCH is a diverse coalition of cultural organizations dedicated to ensuring the greatest participation of all parts of the cultural community in the digital environment. It's members include sixty organizations and institutions representing a broad array of scholars and educational groups, such as libraries and archives. He stated that NINCH has two purposes: to create a unique membership coalition across the breadth of the arts and humanities communities and to make the case for the critical importance of including the contributions and the needs of the arts and humanities communities in all legislation and policy deliberations concerning the digital future.

Mr. Green stated that among the many issues involved in monitoring copyright, and arguably of most concern, were those related to economics and to access of digitally owned material. Mr. Green noted that in an escalating "war" zone between public domain and copyright owners was the "gray area" of fair use. He stated that NINCH saw a window of opportunity to influence copyright law for users in the next generation. Copyright issues are complicated by a confusion of roles: many are simultaneously creators and owners as well as users. Societies like the AHA have a special part to play in reconciling these roles in an environment carefully balanced between cost recovery (intellectual property "ownership") and public access ("fair use").

Mr. Green reported that copyright law has evolved a good deal since the first major law was enacted in 1909. Current law regarding fair use is codified in Sections 107ff of Chapter 1 of Title 17 of the U.S. Code. Section 107 outlines the four factors that determine fair use, and requires interpretation on a case-by-case basis. In 1976, representatives from various interested parties, including publishers and librarians, worked out guidelines to help interpret these sections of the copyright law. The guidelines were developed in response to predicaments raised by "new technologies"--at that time, primarily photocopiers and VCRs. Mr. Green noted that these

guidelines have served the academic community reasonably well, but that it now faced even newer technologies: computers, networks, and digitized formats.

Almost twenty years after the development of the fair use guidelines, the Clinton Administration began a review of this newer technology. Shortly after taking office, President Clinton appointed a National Information Infrastructure Task Force that worked largely through a few working groups, including one on Intellectual Property Rights. It prepared a draft or “green paper” on Intellectual Property in 1994, and released a final, revised “white paper” version in 1995. The white paper discussed intellectual property issues that arise with new information technology and made a number of legislative recommendations. These proposals were introduced in both Houses of Congress in 1996. However, the white paper made no recommendations about fair use and other related library and education limitations on the exclusive rights of copyholders. Instead, it created the Conference on Fair Use (CONFU) to determine whether educational or library guidelines similar to those developed in 1976 could be developed for the current technologies. Several dozen organizations participated but failed to reach a majority agreement. A recent steering committee agreed that no further work would be done.

Although the 1995 “white paper” was not enacted by Congress, it did serve as the template for the 1996 international copyright treaty adopted by the World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO). Mr. Green noted, however, that the treaty evolved quite differently than the Clinton Administration had expected. Legislation to approve the treaty has been introduced in the House and Senate, H.R. 3048 introduced by Reps. Boucher and Campbell, and S.1146 introduced by Sen. Ashcroft. A separate, administration-backed bill, H.R. 2281, is sponsored by Reps. Coble, Hyde, Conyers, and Frank. Mr. Green provided Council members with a side-by-side comparison of the Boucher/Campbell and Administration-backed bills. He noted that that the two would be the focus of campaign by NINCH, and that the Digital Futures Coalition and the National Humanities Alliance were the two principal lobbying organizations. Mr. Green highlighted a few of the differences in the two House bills, discussing quasi-copyright, para-copyright, and super-copyright.

Mr. Green discussed next steps. With the collapse of CONFU, he encouraged active development of policies and principles on the use of copyright. In addition, individual organizations and campuses should work to develop guidelines on the use and management of their own copyright material. He noted that NINCH had agreed to organize a website with model policies and principles. He suggested that the AHA and other learned societies plan annual meeting sessions on these issues.

Mr. Green remarked that if the arts and humanities communities are not successful, the environment would be controlled by large commercial firms that own information. Mr. Katz concurred, stating this was the public policy issue for the AHA and the academic community in the U.S., and that it would be the Research Division's number-one topic. He stated that if these groups are unable to mitigate the pressures, users would find themselves in a "pay-per-view" environment. He encouraged Council members to speak with their home institutions, advising them about the consequences to universities. Mr. Katz also noted, however, that copyright would remain a very complicated issue for organizations like the AHA. On the one hand, the Association is obligated to scholars, teachers, and the public to fight for the same rights as the print environment; on the other hand, the goals of AHA itself are quite different. The AHA relies on print; if the journal goes on-line, what will happen to the AHA's revenue stream? He noted that the AHA was one of first organizations to join NINCH and the Digital Futures Coalition. Ms. Freitag agreed, noting that while the AHA works with these and other organizations (such as NHA), it was only through NINCH that it interacts with the cultural community and thus reached a larger universe. Ms. Appleby suggested one way to familiarize the membership was a series of articles in *Perspectives*. Members agreed, and asked Mr. Katz to work with Mr. Townsend to provide members with an "avalanche of information."

Members also received a written report from the National Humanities Alliance on the intellectual property legislation before the House and Senate.

2. *National Endowment for the Humanities (NEH) Update*: Members were provided with a written report from John Hammer, executive director of the National Humanities Alliance (NHA) regarding the prospects for improved NEH funding in the coming fiscal year. Mr. Hammer addressed NHA's strategy to restore and to expand the programmatic areas of NEH which have been reduced by 40 percent in recent years. He expressed optimism that the political climate was now more favorable to the NEH, particularly since it has become more clearly differentiated from the National Endowment for the Arts, and since the Clinton Administration has been more forceful on issues relating to both endowments. Ms. Freitag followed up Mr. Hammer's report that William Ferris had been appointed chairman of the NEH. She noted that Mr. Ferris had indicated that he planned to have his own initiatives articulated by the end of January. Ms. Freitag also reported that there had been some uneasiness regarding funding for new initiatives, especially if current programs would be scaled back.

The key initiative to be advanced by Mr. Ferris is a plan to establish thirteen regional centers modeled after the Center for the Study of Southern Culture at the University of Mississippi which he founded and directed. She remarked that the AHA had been asked to

encourage Mr. Ferris to think more broadly about this and other issues, especially the composition of the NEH Council, where members' terms are expiring. Members approved Ms. Freitag's suggestion to invite Mr. Ferris to join Council for luncheon during its spring meeting. Mr. Katz voiced concern about reallocation of funds and moving further away from support of research. Mr. Greenberg stressed the importance of the National Humanities Alliance, and its notable work on behalf of the NEH and humanities generally. He encouraged Council members whose universities had humanities departments to join the NHA. Mr. Stearns remarked that the AHA was hampered by the absence of an effective state-based organization and weakened by an inability to address state legislatures. He suggested that the AHA might want to add this to its agenda in the future. Responding to a suggestion that the AHA should recruit state and local history societies in this effort, Mr. Greenberg stated that he did not believe a partnership would be effective since their goals differed from the AHA's.

3. *National Coordinating Committee for the Promotion of History (NCC) Report:* Page Putnam Miller, director of NCC, joined the meeting and provided a report on several advocacy issues. She noted that the NCC is a consortium of 53 organizations, representing the historical and archival professions on issues involving federal funding and policy issues that have an impact on research and teaching, access to government information, employment of historians, public policy issues relating to history, historic preservation, and the dissemination of historical information. She informed Council that the NCC policy board had agreed that NCC should take few positions, and that it should serve as a resource to member organizations. She reported that one of the newer members of NCC, the American Political Science Association, was also becoming more involved. She stated that NCC had been operating as an independent organization for nearly two years, and that as a 501(c)4 organization, could not accept federal funding. She reported that the NCC faced a small deficit, and that most organizations contribute \$250-\$300 annually with policy board organizations contributing \$2,500 to \$3,000.

Ms. Miller reported that history-related programs fared quite well in FY'98 appropriations, noting NEH received a small increase while the National Historical Publications and Records Commission (NHPRC) received a 10 percent increase. She has testified as an outside witness for NEH, NHPRC, and the National Archives for FY'99 appropriation hearings. Ms. Miller briefed members on discussions between the Nixon estate and the U.S. Government regarding the estate's request that it should be compensated for President Nixon's materials. One component of the compensation agreement is a provision to move the Nixon tapes and records from the National Archives facility in College Park, Maryland to the Nixon Library in Yorba Linda, California. She noted there was considerable concern among researchers about allowing

records to leave the Washington, D.C. area. In the Presidential Library system, Library directors are rarely chosen without the consent of the President's family, who retain some indirect control over the operation of the libraries and over access to the records. She advised members that it appears that the U.S. Archivist favors the move to the Nixon Library. Ms. Miller queried how vigorously the AHA would want to respond if it appeared that the Archivist would move forward with this provision. Mr. Katz replied that the AHA should take action; that it had been opposing similar requests for twenty-five years. Mr. Greenberg concurred, suggesting the position is supported by the 1974 act which states custody should remain in the Washington area. Following further discussion, and upon motion by Mr. Greenberg and second by Ms. Ramusack, Council unanimously endorsed the principle that the AHA should explore effective responses and referred the matter to the Research Division.

Ms. Miller also reported that she had been contacted by Naval Research Laboratory (NRL) staff in September concerning the National Archives' recent destruction of historical records. She noted that the records chronicled some of the most significant technical achievements in this century, including a description of the NRL's accomplishments in virtually all the physical and natural sciences from the 1930s to the mid-1980s. The AHA, the Organization of American Historians, and the Society of American Archivists had previously agreed to recommend individuals to serve on an independent task force to evaluate the records disposal policies and processes of the NARA and the Department of the Navy, and to investigate the circumstances which led to the destruction of the NRL records. Upon motion by Mr. Katz and second by Ms. Ramusack, members unanimously agreed to ask Ms. Miller and Mr. Katz to draft a letter for Mr. Miller to President Clinton, Secretary of State Madeline Albright, and CIA director John Podesta.

Ms. Miller provided a brief update on AHA legal cases, including a case that challenges policies allowing destruction of electronic records (filed in 1996), a case on unsealing Grand Jury records (filed in 1997), and a case on Internal Revenue Services records management (dismissed in August 1997). She also reported that the National Archives is seeking comments on criteria for measuring its performance as part of compliance with the Government Performance and Results Act. Ms. Miller noted that she would have more information on the National Archives strategic plan by the spring meeting of the Research Division.

Ms. Miller reported on an Administration recommendation that the government's foreign affairs agencies be reorganized. Part of the proposal was that the U.S. Information Agency's (USIA) cultural and exchange programs be placed within the State Department. Both the House and the Senate passed legislation calling for the USIA, which funds the Fulbright Exchange



Programs, to be merged by September 1, 1999. She reported that Congress had never agreed to a conference report on the two bills, so no law was adopted authorizing the merger. Ms. Miller suggested the AHA might wish to write letters to the Secretary of State and members of Congress about the proposed changes. Mr. Katz agreed to write a letter defending the faculty part of the Fulbright program.

Ms. Miller also provided written updates on declassification legislation, the State Department's Foreign Relations series, copyright, National Park Service Professional Qualifications Standards, and Federal regulations that could be applied to oral history.

4. *National History Education Network (NHEN) Report:* Loretta Lobes, executive director of NHEN, joined the meeting to provide a report on the network's activities during the previous six months. She stated that NHEN is a membership organization devoted to strengthening history education, and is a collaborative of individuals and organizations, including the AHA, the National Council for the Social Studies (NCSS), the Organization of American Historians (OAH), and approximately twenty other organizations. She noted that the Network has a dual role: to serve as a clearinghouse for information related to history teaching, and to serve as an advocate for improved history education in the schools. She reported that NHEN maintains a website (<http://hss.cmu.edu/nhen>) that features links to member organizations and information about state standards under consideration. She provided a brief report about annual meeting sessions organized for member organizations, noting NHEN would sponsor a session during the AHA meeting on collaborative efforts in history teaching.

Ms. Lobes stated that NHEN continued to be active on issues related to history standards. Citing as an example, she reported on the development of the Wisconsin Social Studies Standards. After she had provided comment on a third draft, the state's governor became involved and further politicized discussions. She reported that thirty-six states would administer or formulate assessment examinations in 1998, and that assessment had become the next issue in the evolving standards movement. Ms. Lobes discussed the National Assessment of Educational Programs (NAEP), which is a product of the Educational Testing Service. She noted it can only provide state-wide, not school or regional, reports. In addition, NAEP hadn't been designed as an assessment tool, and couldn't influence "high stake" issues such as teacher contracts, promotion, graduation, etc.

Ms. Lobes reported that another company, ACT, was working with more than twenty states to develop the State Collaborative on Assessment and Student Standards (SCASS) to link national standards with new ideas about appropriate assessment methods. She stated that the Council of Chief State Schools Officers' (CCSSO) had received a \$3.7 million grant to develop

SCASS assessment materials. The organization plans to create 120 sets of linked modules and 120 mini-modules, as well as a CD-ROM for teachers and portfolio assessment materials. Ms. Lobes has been asked to review the history segment of the SCASS assessment. She remarked that in spite of CCSSO's well intentioned efforts, the project was driven by the states' rather than the disciplines' needs.

During the discussion of Ms. Lobes report, Ms. Appleby asked how members of Council might follow up with those states beginning assessment in 1998. Ms. Lobes encouraged members to consult the forthcoming issue of *The History Teacher* for her report, which includes a listing of the states. Mr. Stearns and Ms. Frankel spoke briefly about additional concerns, including the limitation to multiple choice questions given increased costs when essay questions are included.

In closing remarks, Ms. Lobes thanked Mr. Stearns and host institution Carnegie Mellon University for providing financial support for a third year. She discussed the importance of maintaining contact with the 60,000 U.S. social studies teachers and NHEN's role.

5. "Statement on Diversity of Journal Voices" proposed by journal editors: Editors of twenty-five journals met in Bloomington, Indiana in August 1997 to discuss history journals and the electronic future. Among several initiatives, participants believed it was essential to continue conversations begun at the conference and to extend the discussion to other history editors. The group agreed to form a Coalition of History Editors for Publishing in the Future. Initially, the coalition will consist of the editors attending the conference, but will grow to include representatives of other forms of historical media. Mark Szuchman, former editor of the *Hispanic American Historical Review*, drafted a "Statement on Intellectual Diversity" which was brought by Mr. Grossberg for Council endorsement. He remarked that one of conclusions reached at the conference was that the democratic promise of cyberspace was false or was closing, and instead was being "commodified." As a result of this and other trends on the internet, he voiced concern that the proliferation of small journals would be threatened. He cited as an example invitations from J-STOR to join its journal storage project, noting that the *AHR* had been asked to participate but that it was highly unlikely the *Journal of Japanese Studies* would be since *JJS*'s circulation doesn't exceed 800. He remarked that if one of the goals was to deal with the consequences of new media, then there was also a need for ensuring the continuation of a variety of voices. Ms. Freitag also spoke briefly about two related issues that had emerged at the workshop: (1) new scholarship: As new journals are established, librarians are unsure if they should subscribe. Yet if new journals are excluded, it is the profession that loses since journals help to define new fields and bring them to the attention of the profession at large. (2) continuity of journal runs: Libraries are also concerned about the availability of issues for their shelves. Exclusions of

journals by aggregators like J-STOR pose a predicament for librarians: should they continue subscribing to a journal for which they will not have back issues?

Following additional discussion, and upon motion by Mr. Katz and second by Ms. Phillips, the Council voted unanimously to endorse the “Statement.” (See Attachment 3.) Ms. Appleby and Mr. Miller also pointed out that the AHA’s leadership role in the conference, and follow up activities of the Coalition of History Editors, are part of its “umbrella” services to affiliated societies.

6. *Mailing with OHA re: history projects vis-à-vis “human subjects”*: Ms. Phillips reported on the Professional Division’s collaboration with the Oral History Association (OHA) regarding human subjects review for oral history-based research. At its spring 1997 meeting, Council approved an amendment to the “Statement on Interviewing for Historical Documentation” encouraging historians to check with their institutions’ Institutional Review Boards (IRBs). As a follow-up to this initiative, the OHA asked the AHA to join it in two mailings. The first was a response to the National Institute of Health’s Office for Protection from Research Risks for suggestions to the list of research activities that can be listed as eligible for “expedited review.” The second was a memo to all IRBs in the U.S. informing them of oral history principles and protocols. The OHA has agreed to coordinate and underwrite costs of the mailings, which will include a reprint of the AHA’s revised “Statement.” Mr. Katz reported that the Research Division had also approved the mailings.

Following additional discussion and upon motion by Ms. Phillips and second by Ms. Ramusack, Council unanimously approved joining the OHA in the two mailings. Members also asked staff to include the “Statement” in a future Institutional Services Program mailing. Ms. Ramusack remarked that additional efforts will also be needed to disseminate the information throughout the institutional structure of universities, especially to graduate deans or vice presidents of research.

**H. Publishing Issues:** 1. *Division and committee responses to policy paper on Publications Advisory Board (PAB)*: In January 1997, Council requested a policy paper contemplating the utility and possible structure of a body advisory to Council on Association publication policy. Mr. Miller drafted a report with comments from Ms. Appleby, Ms. Bynum, and Ms. Freitag which was discussed at the spring 1997 Council meeting. Members agreed (1) to put into place an ad hoc, advisory committee chaired by Mr. Stearns to begin discussions about the “recombination” project and other issues, and (2) to ask Mr. Miller to redraft the document for consideration by the divisions and committees. Council members were provided with copies of

excerpts from the fall minutes of the Professional, Research, and Teaching Divisions and the Committees on Minority and Women Historians.

Mr. Miller began the discussion by summarizing his understanding of division and committee comments. He remarked that the process of preparing the two drafts for comment had allowed discussion to proceed on several issues, and that the committees' and divisions' reaction was that the proposed PAB would be cumbersome and controlling. He observed that the concept had been the opposite, in fact, and that there had been a discontinuity between what he had intended and what had been addressed. He stated that he had asked each division and committees for its specific needs for consultation and advice as it oversaw the publications within its areas of responsibility. He noted that a PAB should be a resource to draw in publishing professionals, and should not be a reviewing body. If Council chose to go forward, Mr. Miller proposed a substantial revision which would: (1) trim away background material, (2) clarify the purpose as consultative at the initiative of the Council, divisions, and committees, (3) modify board composition from carry-over Council members to individuals with publishing expertise in areas under review, (4) resolve budgetary concerns (since the board would be consultative rather than initiating, it may not need to meet face-to-face. Whatever expenses are anticipated, Council would provide prior authorization), and (5) adjust areas of review and board composition as needed. Mr. Miller noted that the PAB could provide policy papers, ad hoc reviews, etc., and members could be appointed according to issues on Council's agenda. He suggested that these changes would resolve problems in the original draft, and emphasized that he had brought no definite proposals, rather summarized comments of the divisions and committees.

Mr. Katz replied that his review of division and committee comments was slightly different. He noted that each had opposed the board because of its elaborate structure, and all had agreed with the Council that consultation and a broader discussion of the issues should take place. Rather than appoint a PAB, Mr. Katz stated that his instinct was to continue with the ad hoc committee for at least one more year, and to ensure that its composition would help it to address the range of issues under consideration. After its term concluded, Council could appoint additional ad hoc committees as needed to review specific publications and/or issues. Summarizing his comments, Mr. Katz suggested endorsing continuation of the ad hoc committee with Mr. Stearns remaining as chair.

Mr. Trask queried the "problems" or "issues" the ad hoc committee would address. Ms. Phillips replied it could coordinate the general publications policy of the AHA, and could also, for example, advise Council when it must choose among several division and committee proposals. Ms. Bynum agreed, remarking that publication and policy issues have gone back and

forth repeatedly between the Council and divisions, and that there was a larger dynamic that had not been addressed, which had been the crux of Mr. Miller's original report. She stated that general discussions need to take place periodically not only at the division and committee level, but also at the Council level. Ms. Ramusack stated that she also preferred an ad hoc committee that could serve as a priority-setting body. Ms. Hill observed that an ad hoc committee might also take a more critical view and note outside criticism.

Ms. Appleby queried whether there was a general consensus to continue with an ad hoc committee rather than to establish a PAB. Mr. Miller remarked that the ad hoc committee would address some of his concerns, and that he would be satisfied if the AHA continued with that structure. Mr. Stearns remarked that the members of the ad hoc committee had suggested a two-year term and noted that Mr. Katz, a member of the ad hoc committee, would serve on the Council for that period and thus could provide an essential liaison function between the committee and Council. Upon motion by Ms. Ramusack and second by Mr. Trask, members voted unanimously to continue with the publications advisory committee in an ad hoc form for two years. Mr. Stearns pointed out that the committee's work would include a form of strategic planning as urged by the Professional Division minutes, and encouraged members to contact him with their suggestions and opinions.

2. *Report on business undertaken by Ad Hoc Publications Advisory Committee:* Members were provided with copies of correspondence and the minutes from the November 25, 1997 teleconference of the ad hoc committee. Members are Mr. Stearns, chair; Mr. Katz; Ed Ayers, University of Virginia; Julia A. Clancy-Smith, University of Arizona; Michael Jensen, Johns Hopkins University Press; and Lawrence Stone, Princeton University. Ms. Freitag and Mr. Grossberg serve ex officio.

3. *Perspectives Committee report revisited:* As requested at the spring 1997 Council meeting, staff provided a copy of the report on *Perspectives* prepared by the committee of Mr. Stearns, chair; John E. Talbot, University of California at Santa Barbara; and Robert Brent Toplin, University of North Carolina at Wilmington.

4. *Division and Committee responses to recombination possibilities:* Members were provided with excerpts from the fall minutes of the Professional, Research, and Teaching Divisions, and the Committees on Minority and Women Historians on recombination possibilities.

**I. Lunch:** Members adjourned to the Sheraton's Aspen Room for lunch with guests Slade Gorton, Republican Senator from Washington, and Richard McCormick, president of the University of Washington. Following lunch, Ms. Appleby noted Council members had an

opportunity to build upon the discussion with Senator Gorton, and encouraged each to write him. She agreed to remind members via e-mail.

**J. Ongoing Policy Issues:** Members discussed the following: 1. *Guidelines for model history department(s)*: Prompted by a request for guidelines to evaluate history departments at its spring 1997 meeting, the Professional Division began discussing what guidance the division could offer. Division members suggested coordinating with other divisions and committees on the development of a questionnaire to assist departments in characterizing a well-functioning department of history. In discussing the division's proposal at its spring meeting, Council members expressed some reservations, but directed the divisions and committees to continue discussions and to make recommendations to Council.

Council members were provided with excerpts from the fall 1997 minutes of the Professional, Research, and Teaching Divisions and the Committees on Minority and Women Historians. Ms. Appleby asked Ms. Phillips to begin with a discussion of the Professional Division's draft, which shifted from a questionnaire to defining "ideal" or "model" conditions. Ms. Phillips noted that the division had decided to concentrate on the professional aspects of five or six "themes," defining ideal conditions differently for different types of institutions. In discussing the division's draft, Mr. Trask remarked that while it stated what was true for many two-year faculty, it did not define an "ideal" or "model" condition. He noted the draft did not emphasize that two-year faculty should develop pedagogical "currency," and obtain an advanced degree. Mr. Greenberg stated that although he thought the division had made many excellent points, he remained troubled with the Association entering into this arena. While some members concurred, others noted that the AHA is asked repeatedly to provide guidance in the evaluation of departments and that the Association should take a leadership role. Mr. Katz, while noting he had not agreed with Mr. Greenberg's comments at Council's previous meeting, stated he was now persuaded that the AHA should proceed, but should not in the current direction. He noted that more often than not the policies which the "ideal" conditions addressed were the university's not the departments' and therefore would be difficult, if not impossible, to change.

In discussing these concerns, Council also turned to the statement authored by Mr. Trask and endorsed by the Teaching Division at its fall meeting. Members felt it could serve as a basis for evaluating the efforts of institutions at all levels of instruction and for establishing prerequisite conditions for historians to provide excellent instruction. Members complimented Mr. Trask's efforts, and agreed that the statement could serve as a model for "good practices" documents that could be prepared by other divisions and committees. Following additional discussion, and upon a vote of ten ayes and one abstention, Council asked the Professional, Research, and Teaching

Divisions to develop statements of “good practices” on the specific issues within their areas of responsibilities. In addition, members asked that the CMH and CWH to review the documents to ensure that the two committees’ concerns were reflected. Council noted it would not set a timeline for the development of the statements, but would ask the divisions to bring forward once completed.

Council members also approved the Teaching Division statement by a vote of nine ayes, one nay, and one abstention. (See Attachment 4.) Staff was asked to circulate as appropriate, including publication in the newsletter and posting on the AHA’s website.

**K. Report on Development Activities:** Linn Shapiro, manager of new project development, joined the meeting to update members on development activities. She began her report by noting that although it might sound odd, it was an exciting time to do development work. She expressed optimism regarding fundraising possibilities, and noted that the Development Advisory Committee (DAC) was created in large part through the efforts of Mr. Beveridge and what she identified as the “Walter LaFeber aspect.” She reminded members that several former students, inspired by former Council member Mr. LaFeber’s teaching, had become active in the DAC even though they had gone on to careers outside history. She noted that although creative and competent staff support at the headquarters office was crucial, equally important was Council’s own actions. Ms. Shapiro advised members that much of the AHA’s success would follow from the activity they would generate. As an example, she cited a \$25,000 gift from a Disney executive that followed several conversations between Ms. Appleby and the donor. Members noted that the gift had had been deposited into a reserve fund.

Ms. Shapiro reported that the DAC had hosted two Washington, D.C.-based dinners during the past two and a half years, and that DAC members had made commitments to contribute \$1,000 a year each for three years. Mr. Miller noted that DAC member contributions underwrite administrative costs. DAC members are also planning receptions in four or five different cities during 1998, with the first scheduled at the Schlesinger Library in March.

Ms. Shapiro distributed draft text for the creation of a group known as the “Friends of the American Historical Association” to assist in fundraising efforts. Friends would receive the newsletter, recently published pamphlets, and an annual report on the activities that Friends of the AHA have made possible. Although coupled with the plan for the receptions, it would be a group separate from the DAC. Ms. Ramusack asked if different levels of membership were planned, while Mr. Stearns remarked that hosting receptions was an expensive way to raise money. Mr. Katz concurred, stating that many organizations had discovered they didn’t recover costs, and suggested establishing membership levels at \$200 or \$250. Mr. Beveridge remarked that the

Friends concept was not yet fully defined, and encouraged further planning. Ms. Shapiro agreed that additional systems would need to be in place before the Friends effort could be fully implemented. Ms. Appleby reminded Council that it had approved the fundraising initiative, and suggested that the AHA review its success after the three-year period. Ms. Phillips agreed with Mr. Stearns that the dinners and receptions were worthy efforts but would be more effective as public relations rather than fundraising events, and suggested that the newsletter would be the most useful publication to send to the Friends. Mr. Greenberg reported that the Organization of American Historians (OAH) had also raised money in this way, and encouraged the DAC and staff to talk with the OAH and other organizations.

Noting members' comments, Ms. Appleby stated that she understood members' sense of caution and its request for a comprehensive evaluation at the end of the three year-year period. Upon question by Mr. Miller if the AHA was properly situated for staffing, Ms. Shapiro responded that she thought the job required a one-half of a full-time position to be done appropriately. Mr. Miller also asked if initiatives had been identified for the \$25,000 gift and donations from Friends. Mr. Stearns noted that a standard development practice was to use some portion of the money raised for ongoing, rather than new or special, projects. Following additional discussion, and upon motion by Mr. Katz that Council acquiesce to continuation of fundraising efforts for the three-year period, members concurred by a vote of ten ayes and one abstention.

**L. Standing Reports:** *1. Report of the Teaching Division:* Mr. Stearns reported on the November 9 meeting of the division, and remarked that with Council's earlier approval for publication of the Steeves and Cuello pamphlets on the AHA website (see section B.6.), that the AHA had moved toward the kind of publishing program the division had worked to put into place. He stated that as his term concluded, two goals had not been achieved: (1) productive outreach to television, and (2) joint venture with a publisher on high school instructional materials. Mr. Stearns remarked that he continued to believe in both projects, but that he was not sure of the eventual outcome of either. He briefly reported on useful discussions with the Professional Division during a joint dinner meeting in the fall, and remarked that the two divisions would continue to work together to address shared concerns. Following up on Ms. Lobes discussion of the standards movement, Mr. Stearns reiterated that state standards concerns remained active but that, on the whole, focus had shifted to assessment. He also noted that the division remained interested in the CD-ROM world history project, but had nothing new to report.



Mr. Stearns brought two items for Council action: (1) *textbook prize recommendation*: At its fall meeting, the division voted to recommend a textbook prize that would recognize outstanding textbooks at the secondary and post-secondary level. As with the three teaching prizes awarded by the Committee on Teaching Prizes, the division would retain oversight of policy and procedural matters, and would assist in publicizing selections widely. The Committee on Committees would appoint a seven-member prize committee with three secondary-school historians, two post-secondary historians with specialties in U.S. history, and two post-secondary historians with specialties in western civ and/or world history. Six textbook prizes would be awarded annually, with textbooks at the secondary and post-secondary levels in the fields of U.S. history, world history, and western civ eligible for the honorific prizes. All committee work would be completed by mail/e-mail to hold costs at a minimum, and the committee could divide into working subcommittees for preliminary sorting and elimination. The division also suggested the prize for possible development activity to augment and broaden the AHA's work in textbook evaluation.

Mr. Stearns reiterated that awards would be honorific, and that the goal was to encourage publication of secondary and post-secondary textbooks. He noted that the division initially suggested three prize categories, but envisioned additional awards in other fields. In a preliminary vote, Council approved the proposal by a vote of ten ayes and one abstention. Ms. Hata then queried if the division had discussed an entry fee, while other members questioned the frequency and number of the awards. Mr. Stearns responded that the Association needed to gain experience, but suggested as an alternative that the awards could be offered on a three-cycle rotation. Mr. Fink pointed out that college-level textbook publishers were fiercely competitive, and stated that he was troubled about the enormous burden this would place on the selection committee. Other members posed additional questions, such as how the criteria would be defined for the different levels and fields and how the committee would apply the different criteria to each level. Ms. Young also expressed concern that winning an award would be viewed as AHA endorsement.

Following additional discussion, and upon motion by Greenberg and second by Ms. Ramusack, discussion was tabled by a vote of eight in favor and three opposed to the motion.

2. *NCSS Task Force*: Mr. Stearns reported that the division and the National Council for the Social Studies (NCSS) had agreed in principle to form a joint ad hoc committee to develop funding proposals in the areas of teacher training, K-12, and teacher enhancement. He stated that the division asked Council to endorse the initiative in principle, with the understanding that specific projects would be submitted for approval either at regular Council meetings or by mail.

In discussing the proposal, Mr. Katz and other members of the Council agreed that collaboration would be useful and expressed support. Upon motion by Mr. Stearns, Council unanimously endorsed the joint AHA-NCSS initiative.

In concluding his final report to Council, Mr. Stearns expressed appreciation to members of the division with whom he had served, to Mr. Trask, and to Ms. Frankel. He also urged Council to discuss, rather than evade, textbook-related issues.

**M. Recess:** On behalf of the Council, Ms. Appleby thanked Ms. Bynum, outgoing immediate past president; vice president Mr. Stearns, and Council members Ms. Ramusack and Mr. Trask for exemplary service during their terms of office. She thanked Ms. Bynum especially for her service, and presented a plaque marking her presidential year.

There being no further business, the meeting recessed at 4:40 p.m. to convene on Sunday, January 11, at 8:30 a.m.

Recorded by  
Sharon K. Tune

## Minutes of the Council Meeting, January 11, 1998

The Council met in Room 203 of the Washington State Convention and Trade Center in Seattle, Washington, on Sunday, January 11, 1998. President Joseph C. Miller called the meeting to order at 8:50 a.m. Present were: Mr. Miller; Robert Darnton, president-elect; Joyce Appleby, immediate past president; vice presidents Carla Rahn Phillips (Professional Division), Stanley N. Katz (Research Division), and Leon Fink (Teaching Division); Council members Douglas Greenberg, Nadine Hata, Emily Hill, Cheryl Martin, Colin Palmer, and Marilyn Young; Sandria B. Freitag, executive director; Michael Grossberg, editor, *AHR*; Sharon K. Tune, assistant director, administration; Noralee Frankel, assistant director on women, minorities, and teaching; Randy Norell, controller; and Robert Townsend, manager, information systems and communications.

Mr. Miller welcomed Mr. Darnton, Mr. Fink, Ms. Hata, and Ms. Young, noting that continuing members of Council and the AHA staff looked forward to working with them. Council then resumed discussion of policy issues and reports from division and committees begun during the Thursday, January 8 session.

**J. Ongoing Policy Issues continued:** 2. *Evaluating scholarship:* At its January and spring 1997 meetings, Council asked each of the divisions and committees to discuss (1) downsizing of departments, (2) the decline in publishing of monographs, and (3) the need to create appropriate methods of evaluating scholarship, and to appoint a representative to serve on a workgroup should Council determine that a subcommittee was needed to continue the dialogue. Council members were provided with excerpts from the fall minutes of the Professional, Research, and Teaching Divisions and the Committees on Minority and Women Historians. Representatives suggested to serve on a workgroup were: Professional Division: Leila Fawaz, Tufts University; Research Division: Cheryl Martin, University of Texas at El Paso; Teaching Division: Teofilo Ruiz, Princeton University; Committee on Minority Historians: Clara Sue Kidwell, University of Oklahoma; and Committee on Women Historians: Carla Hesse, University of California at Berkeley.

3. *Part-time/Adjunct project:* Members were provided with a copy of the report from the September 26-28, 1997 "Conference on the Growing Use of Part-time/Adjunct Faculty" sponsored by the Professional Division. Ms. Freitag reported that Council had approved a \$3,000 contribution to the general fund which underwrote conference costs. She noted that ten other organizations also contributed funds, and that approximately \$4,000 remained to print the report

and cover AHA staff costs. Ms. Freitag stated that sponsoring organizations had agreed to recommend that each organization contribute \$1,000 toward follow-up dissemination of the report. Funds would provide administrative support (part-time work-study student), postage, and other costs related to disseminating the report to local governance officials and others on targeted lists. Ms. Freitag noted that the report would also be sent to all American Council of Learned Society (ACLS) organizations prior to the ACLS annual meeting in April 1998 so each would have time to consult with its governing board. A press conference will then be scheduled at ACLS to announce sponsors and availability of the report. Ms. Freitag pointed out that the follow-up efforts enabled the AHA to continue as the “point” organization without incurring additional costs. She also called to members’ attention an e-mail from Milton Blood, a specialized accreditor who is a member of the Association of Specialized and Professional Accreditors. He has offered to assist in distributing the report to ASPA members.

Mr. Miller stated that he interpreted Ms. Freitag’s request as a designation, rather than an allocation, of funds. Ms. Freitag concurred, and noted that she did not foresee requests for additional contributions. She also asked Council to reaffirm its support of the project. Upon motion by Mr. Katz and second by Ms. Appleby, Council unanimously agreed to designate \$1,000 for follow-up dissemination of the conference report as a matching amount contributed by other sponsoring organizations. Ms. Freitag asked members if they had additional suggestions for dissemination of the report. Council agreed that it should be included in a future AHA Institutional Services Program (ISP) mailing, and that Ms. Freitag should use her judgment on further distribution. Ms. Phillips noted that the Professional Division would use the report as the basis for a “good practices” statement.

*4. Update: revisions proposed for Nominating Committee re: election materials:* At its February 1997 meeting, the AHA Nominating Committee proposed revising the biographic materials which accompany the annual ballot to elect AHA officers. After an initial discussion at the spring 1997 Council meeting, staff was asked to refer the Nominating Committee’s recommendation as modified by Council to the divisions and committees. Council members were provided with excerpts from the fall minutes of the Professional, Research, and Teaching Divisions and the Committees on Minority and Women Historians.

In reporting the Professional Division’s discussion, Ms. Phillips noted that the division’s primary concern was that lesser known specialties and fields would not be penalized. She suggested that information not become so truncated that only the well known were well represented. In addition, she remarked that she wasn’t sure that the changes would increase voter-turnout. Mr. Katz concurred and stated that career information was useful, but that the

statement in its current limited format was not, and suggested asking candidates to comment on their careers as it related to the job for which they were nominated. Ms. Appleby disagreed that the statements were useless, remarking that without controversies to address, people tend to make innocuous statements. Mr. Darnton agreed with Ms. Appleby, and suggested providing candidates with an open-ended questionnaire that they could elect to address. He noted this followed a Professional Division recommendation that an equivalent to a “League of Women Voters” set of questions be provided. Ms. Freitag stated that another recommendation was that AHA materials make clear that the questionnaire sent by an affiliate, the Coordinating Council for Women in History, was from the affiliate and not the AHA. Ms. Martin questioned why candidates were allowed such brief statements. Ms. Tune described the differing word counts allowed for the various offices, and noted the primary reason for the limitations was to control the booklet’s length, thereby controlling printing and postage costs. Mr. Fink suggested changing the format rather than increasing the number of words allowed in the statements. Candidates would be given more leeway within standardized parameters, and statement would be retained with additional guidelines.

After further discussion, and upon motion by Ms. Hata and second by Mr. Katz, Council agreed that the Nominating Committee should develop the format and draft guidelines for the revised biographies. Staff was asked to circulate the committee’s recommendations for Council revision and approval so the revised guidelines could be mailed to candidates on the 1998 ballot.

**L. Standing Reports:** 2. *Report of the AHR Editor:* Mr. Grossberg added remarks to his written report, which included a summary on production costs and a technology update, noting *AHR* printing costs from 1993 through 1997; a report on the distribution of unsolicited manuscript submissions for the final six months of 1997; and a copy of the final report of the “History Journals and the Electronic Future” conference. He briefed members on the unexpected loss of the February lead review, pointing out it was a good example of the working relationship between the *Review* and its printer, Cadmus. He reported that the staff had been able to make last-minute changes without incurring additional costs. Mr. Grossberg also briefed members on the staff’s efforts to reach out to historians who believe the *AHR* is primarily a journal for historians of Western Europe and North America. He noted that submissions in Asian history have increased significantly; however, submissions in other areas such as Latin America and the Middle East continue to lag. Mr. Grossberg reported that the *Review* staff was also working on a number of forums in these fields.

Mr. Grossberg reported that the *AHR* is operating within its budget and had saved \$35,000 in 1997, primarily by taking advantage of declining paper costs and by maintaining

stability in total number of pages. He reported that the staff had decided to devote only one issue to the millennium, and had published an open call for submissions rather than commission articles. In noting that Council had approved the revised copyright forms under the consent calendar, Mr. Grossberg asked, and members agreed, that he could work with the AHA attorney to simplify the forms for use by the *AHR*. Mr. Grossberg also reported that he had begun preliminary work to identify replacements on the Board of Editors for Jane Caplan and Richard Wortman, whose terms expire in May 1998. In addition, individuals will be suggested for two new slots that will round Board membership to twelve people, each serving staggered, three-year terms. Mr. Palmer queried whether Mr. Grossberg might reconsider current guidelines on selection of board members. Mr. Grossberg responded that he hoped to address a number of concerns by the types of historians named to the two new board positions, and that his initial inclination was to suggest a world historian and a historian who specializes in historical methodology. Ms. Appleby inquired about the average time from submission to acceptance for an article. Mr. Grossberg replied that the usual timeframe was six months, but that it would vary a good deal depending on the revision process. Ms. Appleby noted this length of time could factor in the number and fields of submissions. Mr. Grossberg concurred, noting that he had rewritten submission guidelines specifically to address this and other issues, and that the *Review* did not “backlog” articles.

Mr. Grossberg stated that following the successful conference of journal editors in Bloomington, he believed it was time to begin discussing the *AHR* and electronic publication. While the issue had not even been discussed during his interview for the editorship, Mr. Grossberg noted it had come to dominate his tenure as editor. Remarking that he knew little about electronic publication when he began planning the conference, Mr. Grossberg stated he was now convinced that there were a number of interlocking issues that must be addressed. In addition, he stated he believed that it was his responsibility to maintain: (1) the *AHR*’s basic mission, (2) traditional high craft standards, (3) the journal’s position as the principle scholarly publication of the Association, and (4) the *Review*’s autonomy within the organization. He stated he had learned there would be time for deliberation and reasoned entry into electronic publication. Mr. Katz stated that the appointment of ad hoc committee to work with Mr. Grossberg and the *Review* staff would be crucial, and that he would make a proposal on behalf of the Research Division during his report. Ms. Appleby thanked Mr. Grossberg, commenting on his leadership role not only in the AHA but also in the profession. Citing inadequate time for discussion at the moment, Mr. Greenberg encouraged Council to have an expanded discussion about the *Review* and electronic publication. Members agreed, and asked that sufficient time be

allotted on the spring meeting agenda, and that Mr. Grossberg and Ms. Freitag compile appropriate agenda materials.

3. *Report of the Professional Division:* Ms. Phillips reported on the division's November 8 meeting and a joint dinner meeting with the Teaching Division. She brought the following items for discussion and information: (a) "*Electioneering*": During the fall election period AHA staff received information that three affiliates had "endorsed" specific candidates for AHA offices who were members of the affiliated societies. Although the AHA does not have written rules regarding "campaigning" for elective office, in a scholarly association such activity is generally considered inappropriate. The staff provided copies of the material and asked the division if it wished to think about developing a general statement with regard to the nature of AHA elections and forward to Council for its consideration. Ms. Phillips summarized Professional Division discussion, noting division members had agreed that if a statement was developed it should indicate that the AHA was neutral on "electioneering," and that when it did occur, it should conform to AHA professional standards. A member of the division had been asked to draft a statement for discussion via e-mail prior to the Council meeting. Ms. Phillips noted that the member had not followed up and, accordingly, asked Council for its advice on this issue. She reported that she had asked the Coordinating Council for Women in History (CCWH) for a copy of the questionnaire it mailed to AHA candidates. She stated that the literature clearly stated that the CCWH was an affiliated society, and that she had followed up with the group after it expressed apprehension about the inquiry.

After Mr. Miller expressed some concern about the effect of electioneering, Ms. Phillips noted that the AHA itself has an "agenda" as evidenced by the Nominating Committee's pairing of specific candidates to ensure that certain fields are represented, and that she believed it would be hypocritical for the Association to forbid affiliates from recommending candidates to their own memberships. Stating that he did not think the AHA should encourage electioneering, Mr. Darnton commented that the CCWH mailing had made him feel "called on the carpet" and that not responding would make a difference in the outcome of the election. He noted that one way to mitigate this effect was to explain in AHA materials to candidates that the CCHW is an affiliated society, and that it does not speak for the AHA.

Mr. Miller asked if it would be useful to distinguish between public statements and written guidance to nominees in order to alleviate some of the confusion. Ms. Phillips stated that she would be happy to draft a one- or two-paragraph statement. After Ms. Young suggested that the statement should be sent to candidates only, Ms. Freitag pointed out that these affiliates and others would have no way of knowing the AHA's position. She suggested inserting the brief

statement in the candidate biographical materials as well as providing to candidates. Ms. Appleby agreed with Ms. Phillips that she also did not find anything objectionable about the affiliates' activities, and suggested that the AHA make no statement, while Ms. Hata remarked that focusing on affiliates might be alienating. Following additional discussion, and upon motion by Mr. Greenberg and second by Mr. Katz, Council agreed that the Professional Division should handle specific queries on a case-by-case, ad hoc basis; that Ms. Phillips should draft a brief response to the three affiliates; and that Ms. Tune should inform candidates that the CCWH is an affiliated society and that its mailings do not go to the AHA membership.

(b) *EIB policy guidelines*: Ms. Phillips reported that the division would revise the employment information guidelines for clarity and consistency, and that the revision would not make any changes to the policy. Division members will revise and bring to Council at its spring meeting.

4. *Report of the Research Division*: Mr. Katz reported on the October 25-26 division meeting and brought the following items for action: (a) *Recommendation re: subvention for publications in revised prize guidelines*: The division recommended that the AHA's Policy on Prizes be revised as follows:

- (1) Add a new item 5, which would read: "People proposing new awards should be encouraged to fund subventions. Presses would recommend manuscripts that they consider of high quality but would be unlikely to publish without subvention.
- (2) Current item 5 would become item 6, and all subsequent numbers would be changed according.

Mr. Miller queried if this would create two types of awards, book prizes and publication awards. Mr. Katz responded that it would, and that the fund would need to accumulate over several years and it would be some time before funds could be utilized. He noted that the addition would give Ms. Freitag and the division vice president a "charge" to negotiate with donors of prize funds. Members voted unanimously to accept the division's proposal. (See Attachment 5 for a complete copy of the revised Policy on Prizes.) (b) *Formation of ad hoc subcommittee on future of AHR*: The division recommended the formation of an ad hoc committee to make policy recommendations on the future of the AHR. The subcommittee would be appointed by the president, report to the Research Division, and include Mr. Grossberg; Gail Ross, the AHA's lawyer for copyright matters; a division representative; and one or more individuals with expertise in publishing business plans. Members voted unanimously to accept the division's recommendation.



In discussing the division's oversight of the Annual Meeting, Mr. Darnton asked staff to explore ways to shorten the award presentation section of the General Meeting.

5. *Report of TFROGS*: Members noted Ms. Hill's written report and task force composition for 1998: Ms. Hill, chair; Teresa Mah, University of Chicago (CMH graduate student member); Jennifer Brier, Rutgers University (CWH graduate student member); Gail Savage, St. Mary's College of Maryland (Professional Division member); Fred Schnabel, Harvard University (at-large member); and Michael Ross, University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill (at-large member).

6. *Report of the Committee on Minority Historians*: Members were provided with a written report on the CMH's 1997 meetings, and noted that Temple University Press has agreed to publish the diversity series as a two-volume set, with the first volume devoted to teaching of women and people of color, and the second to the history of women of color.

7. *Report of the Committee on Women Historians*: Members were provided with a written report on the CWH's October 29 teleconference, and on the Women and Gender in a Global Context pamphlet series. A "working paper" on spousal hiring will be published in a spring issue of *Perspectives* to generate further discussion of these issues within the profession.

8. *Report of the 1997 Nominating Committee*: Members were provided with a copy of the published report of the Nominating Committee listing the successful candidates for elective office and the written report of chair Arthur Zilversmit, Lake Forest College.

9. *Report of the Pacific Coast Branch*: Members were provided with a copy of the written report of the 1997 activities of the Pacific Coast Branch of the AHA. W. David Baird, PCB secretary-treasurer, provided copies of the minutes of the PCB council and the financial statement of the organization. The PCB receives an annual subvention of \$2,000 from the AHA, and mails a copy of its annual program to every member of the AHA that resides in the eleven western states, Mexico, and Canada. Mr. Baird reported that the 1997 president, John Nevin of Claremont College, had died in mid-August, and that vice president Albert Hurtado, Arizona State University, assumed the presidency. The next annual meeting of the Branch is scheduled in San Diego, August 6-9, 1998.

**N. Discussion of Recent Changes in Council/AHA practices:** 1. *Report from the subcommittee on planning processes*: Members were provided with the subcommittee's written report prepared by Mr. Palmer. Noting the lack of time to discuss the report, Council asked staff to schedule consideration of the report on the first day of the spring meeting and to allow sufficient time for discussion. Members also asked Mr. Palmer to provide a list of specific proposals that the subcommittee would like Council to consider.

2. *Evaluation of Expanded Executive Committee and its activities:* Mr. Miller noted that the AHA constitution provided for a five-person Executive Committee, and that Council had expanded to six members on an ad hoc basis during former president Caroline Bynum's term. The three presidents and three vice presidents serve on the committee, with the most recently elected vice president serving ex officio. Upon Mr. Miller's recommendation, Council agreed to continue with the expanded composition for 1998.

**O. Annual Meeting site review:** Mr. Miller introduced Ms. Tune, noting her role as Convention Director and offering appreciation for her work and efforts. Ms. Tune provided a written report and furnished materials to newly elected Council members which had been provided to continuing members previously, including the AHA's Annual Meeting Policy and Guidelines for Implementation, Annual Meeting Site Selection Procedures, sample letters to convention bureaus and hotels, Contract Addendum, Annual Meeting Specifications, and a list of previous locations of AHA Annual Meetings.

1. *Status report for 2001, 2004:* Ms. Tune reported on completed negotiations for the 2001 and 2004 annual meetings: (a) *Jan. 4-7, 2001 meeting:* At its spring meeting, Council approved the continuation of negotiations with four cities for the 2001/East Coast meeting, and indicated a rank-ordered preference of Toronto, Boston, Philadelphia, and New York City. Since costs, especially for food/beverage at AHA and affiliate events, were of particular concern at the 1997 New York meeting, Ms. Tune conducted a cost comparison. She discovered that, as expected, New York was the most expensive overall, with Boston, Toronto, and Philadelphia much less costly. In addition, room rates proposed by New York hotels were substantially higher than other cities. Ms. Tune noted that two of the four hotels essential to a Philadelphia "package" were still under construction. Although slated for completion by 2000, she expressed concern that if construction were delayed at either property, the AHA would need to add an expensive shuttle service to accommodate hotels at greater distance from the Convention Center. Although these anticipated costs could be built into a rebate program, it would add to the bottom line for hotel rates.

In making a selection between the Toronto and Boston packages, Ms. Tune reported that her primary concern with Toronto arrangements was that the largest available hotel space could not accommodate the AHA's current space requirement for 140 exhibits. Some booths would need to be placed in an open area which would add to security costs. Other costs would also be higher, including food/beverage (in spite of a favorable exchange rate), and items not covered by contract, such as telephone line-connection charges and AHA receptions. In addition, Ms. Tune

noted that the hotels were some distance from one another, and that the Boston package presented a more compact configuration.

Ms. Tune reported the following favorable concessions in the successful Boston package: guaranteed rates of \$99 single and \$110 double; twenty-six rooms at 50 percent off convention rates for staff, honorees, and others on the AHA's housing list; upgrades to club or concierge level for Council and other VIPs; complimentary suites; hotel-sponsored receptions for the president and executive director (representing a savings to the AHA of \$7,000-\$10,000); parlors at the convention single rate for Job Register usage; hotel assumption of costs for Job Register equipment (as a comparison, the AHA paid \$13,000 for tables/chairs in New York); gratis telephone installation/set rental and rekeying of offices; and gratis meeting space and exhibit hall rental.

(b) *Jan. 8-11, 2004 meeting*: As discussed and approved at the spring Council meeting, Ms. Tune reported that she had concluded negotiations with the Sheraton Washington and Omni Shoreham hotels in Washington, D.C. for the 2004 annual meeting. She briefly reported the concessions negotiated for this meeting: guaranteed rates of \$99 single and \$119 double; staff rooms at 50 percent off convention rates for staff, honorees, and others on the AHA's housing list; upgrades for Council and other VIPs; additional suites; hotel-sponsored receptions for the president and the executive director; and complimentary parking spaces and microphones. The Sheraton property also offered to host Council's spring 2003 meeting and to honor meeting rates.

2. *Next steps for 2002, 2003*: Ms. Tune asked members for input on the 2002 and 2003 meeting sites and negotiations: (a) *Jan. 3-6, 2002/West Coast*: According to the rotational pattern established by Council, staff was to explore West Coast cities for the 2002 meeting. At its spring 1997 meeting, Council agreed that staff could explore San Francisco as a meeting site, and had asked staff to postpone if possible a final decision on the 2002 site until the January Council meetings. Ms. Tune reported that Seattle had expressed interest in hosting the meeting for more than a year, but that staff delayed a decision until Council and staff could evaluate the success of the 1998 meeting. Ms. Tune asked for Council feedback about Seattle as a meeting site; about California sites, especially San Francisco and Anaheim; and about other cities that staff should explore. She reported that the Seattle hotels and the convention center had indicated their high level of interest by quoting confirmed single rates under \$100 (with rates including a rebate to cover rental costs of the Convention Center). Ms. Tune noted that San Francisco hotels had also indicated interest, and that she had just been advised that the city was available after another group which had a "first option" on the dates decided to book elsewhere. Ms. Tune also noted that Anaheim hotels had expressed interest.

In discussing Seattle, Ms. Freitag reported that the preliminary registration figure was approximately 3,600, and that exhibit hall sales had come in on budget. Ms. Appleby asked if Ms. Tune had explored Los Angeles as a meeting site. Ms. Tune stated that she had not based upon the 1981 meeting when the AHA recorded a record low attendance of 1,800, and what she perceived as a lack of an attractive hotel package. Ms. Appleby remarked that this was an odd perception considering LA's major city status, and asked if the AHA might inquire about other associations' meeting experiences. Ms. Young agreed with Ms. Tune, stating that she had found LA to be a terrible meeting site, that it wasn't a "walking" city, and that meal costs were extremely high. Mr. Katz concurred with Ms. Young, and stated that although he loved the city, it wasn't a good place for conventions because it lacked adequate convention hotels.

In discussing Seattle, Ms. Tune reported that the 1998 Local Arrangements Committee co-chairs had asked the AHA not to return to Seattle too soon, at least not before eight to ten years. Ms. Freitag also reminded members of a previous Council directive that the AHA should limit the number of "second tier" cities to one in four, in consideration of the annual meeting location's effect on revenues. Following additional discussion, and upon motion by Mr. Katz and second by Ms. Phillips, Council unanimously agreed that Ms. Tune should proceed with San Francisco as its preferred site for the 2002 meeting, and Seattle as its second. Since another association has expressed interest in San Francisco for the same dates, members also agreed that Ms. Tune could circulate the information required by the AHA's site selection procedures by mail during the spring so that contracts could be finalized prior to the spring Council meeting.

(b) *Jan. 2-5, 2003/Midwest:* Since Council's first choice preference of New Orleans did not have the dates available, Ms. Tune asked members to suggest a list of cities to consider for the 2003 meeting. Members suggested Atlanta, Chicago, Cleveland, Dallas, Houston, Indianapolis, Minneapolis, and San Antonio. Ms. Tune will explore availability, collect information as required by site selection procedures, and report to the spring Council meeting.

3. *Rotational pattern for out-years:* Ms. Tune reported she has received several inquiries from convention bureaus regarding "outyear" rotation and asked Council to discuss briefly the rotational pattern after 2004. However, given time limitations, discussion was postponed until the June meeting.

4. *Appreciation to 1998 Program and Local Arrangements Committees:* Upon recommendation of Mr. Miller, and motion by Ms. Martin and second by Mr. Darnton, Council unanimously approved an expression of appreciation to the 1998 LAC. Mr. Miller will write to the committee and the seventy hourly workers who worked with the LAC. Ms. Freitag and Ms. Tune will also write to the Program and Local Arrangements Committees.

**P. Annual Meeting Program Issues:** *1. Issues re: coverage:* Members were provided with copies of letters from Alonzo Hamby, Ohio University, and Sally Marks, Providence, Rhode Island, addressing issues of balance and coverage in the annual meeting program. Ms. Marks expressed similar concerns about the Association's George Louis Beer Prize, an annual book award for the best book on European international history since 1895. Mr. Hamby remarked that the program "is almost monolithic in its apparent assumption that the only history worth doing consists of certain kinds of cultural studies that usually connect in some fashion to one of the currently fashionable themes of race, class, or gender." He stated that for several years he has wondered if the Council and Program Committee could "possibly be ignorant of the anger and bitterness about this exclusionary policy" that he often heard from colleagues and acquaintances. He encouraged the AHA to study the American Political Science Association example of providing organized "sections" with a certain number of program panels in ratio to their membership. Ms. Marks stated that one of the reasons for the "emotion" over the Beer Prize is that it is a "symptom of a larger problem, namely that the American Historical Association, which is supposed to represent all forms and fields of history, is turning into the American Social and Cultural Association." She also cited the AHA program, noting "unbalanced" Program Committees had produced "unbalanced" programs. Members also reviewed a letter from David Kaiser, Naval War College, who expressed concern along with twelve other signatories about the AHA's "handling" of the Beer Prize, and an e-mail exchange between Sara Evans, 1998 AHA Program Committee chair, and Ms. Marks.

Council members agreed that the genuine and compelling concerns reflected in the correspondence should be addressed. Upon motion by Mr. Greenberg and second by Mr. Katz, Council asked that the Professional Division address the issues raised in the correspondence, and that Mr. Grossberg consider an *AHR* forum. In addition, Ms. Young agreed to take the lead in developing an Annual Meeting session on the diplomatic history field in transition.

*2. Consultation with 1999 program chair:* John Voll, Georgetown University and chair of the 1999 Program Committee, joined the meeting to brief members on planning for the 1999 Washington, D.C. program. He noted that the committee's major effort was development of the basic program of more than 130 panels reflecting the interests and expertise of the membership of the AHA. He highlighted three areas for discussion with Council. (a) Mr. Voll reported that he had placed great emphasis on distributing the "Call for Papers" widely, noting that H-NET had been helpful. Even so, he noted that the number of submissions for the committee's first meeting had been lower than the number received the previous year.

(b) Mr. Voll stated he had also focused on outreach to affiliates. In addition to participating in the biennial affiliates-AHA meeting on the preceding Friday chaired by Mr. Miller, Mr. Voll wrote to each affiliate in September, including special notes on about half. Although only four responded to the chair directly, he reported a number of useful conversations which should have an impact on the program. Specifically, the Conference on Latin American History (CLAH) would work closely with the committee, and Mr. Voll hoped to avoid many of the problems that existed in the past. The Medieval Academy of America (MAA) had also contacted Mr. Voll, and he anticipated enhanced coverage of medieval subjects on the 1999 program. Mr. Voll remarked that the AHA needed to reconsider its relationship with affiliates. Although the AHA may not want to “dedicate” slots for affiliates, it might consider establishing a more formal process similar to the one Mr. Voll instituted with CLAH and MAA. Mr. Voll noted that during the previous year he had talked with a number of AHA members and affiliates, and that one of the most difficult and elusive tasks he faced was to understand what the AHA membership really wanted in the annual meeting program. He questioned how the Association could consult with the membership, and whether the program should highlight, as some had suggested, “stars” in each field.

(c) Mr. Voll also noted a number of special aspects of the 1999 program. The plenary session will focus on the general theme of diasporas and migrations. He noted that the committee hoped the plenary will be the keynote for a kind of “conference within a conference” and will provide new insights into the issues involved in the study of diasporas and migrations in history. Mr. Voll also noted that precollegiate teachers have long been recognized as an important part of the profession, but that their interests had not always been adequately addressed in the annual meetings. He noted that committee member David Kobrin was coordinating and planning several events for K-12 teachers. Mr. Voll also noted that the Washington, D.C. area provided special opportunities, and that the committee had contacted the Library of Congress and other institutions to see if it might work with them to plan a series of special meetings and receptions for members.

In discussing the committee’s plans, Ms. Appleby asked Mr. Voll how many sessions would be devoted to the theme. Mr. Voll reported that approximately one-third of the sessions would be about diasporas and migrations, and noted this added another constriction on the total number of sessions. Mr. Katz suggested that Mr. Voll contact Carolyn Brown who works in the Library of Congress’s area studies reading room, and stated that he thought the meeting would be the occasion for meetings with key people at the National Archives, the NEH, and other places of special interest to the AHA. Mr. Fink concurred, stating the AHA would miss a valuable opportunity if did not capitalize on the site of the meeting. Mr. Grossberg reported that the

*Review* staff is considering the plenary as an *AHR* forum. Mr. Palmer questioned, in light of past criticisms of the program, what percentage of submitted panels were rejected. Mr. Voll replied that for the 1998 meeting, the committee received 350 finished proposals and had accepted 164 sessions. Ms. Phillips queried criteria for acceptance, and Mr. Voll responded that the primary objective was to achieve a balance across as many fields as possible. He stated the committee asked, "Is this a very clearly presented proposal that has some purpose?" Ms. Phillips commented that she applauded Mr. Voll's outreach to affiliates, noting that simply opening lines of communication, without changing the committee's criteria, was an important first step. Mr. Katz remarked that the AHA should poll AHA members on what they think about the Annual Meeting, and stated that the Research Division would discuss a possible survey at its spring meeting. Mr. Miller also noted two additional developments. He planned to ask the AHA staff for suggestions about revising the printed program format, and integrating affiliates' sessions into the program. If concrete suggestions develop, Mr. Miller will bring recommendations to Council for consideration.

3. *Consultation with 2000 program chair:* Claire Moses, University of Maryland at College Park and 2000 Program Committee chair, joined the meeting for preliminary discussions with Council about plans for the Chicago program. She stated that she and co-chair James Henretta serve as working members of the 1999 committee to gain experience for their term as chair and co-chair. She noted they were aware that the year 2000 called for "taking stock," and they had discussed "Doing History in the 21st Century" as possible theme. As called for by the Program Committee guidelines, Ms. Moses will present suggestions to the Research Division at its spring 1998 meeting for appointments of nine members to the 2000 committee. The 2001 chair and cochair will serve as working members of the committee as well.

4. *Suggestions for 1999 Local Arrangements Committee:* Upon request by Ms. Freitag for suggestions for the 1999 LAC chair, members suggested that she first speak with Jack Censer, George Mason University. Additional suggestions (not ranked) were: Patricia Aufderheide, American University's School of Communications; Jane Turner Censer, George Mason University; Spencer Crew, Smithsonian Institution.; Daniel Ernst, Georgetown University Law School; Gay Gullickson, University of Maryland at College Park; Alan Kraut, American University; Maeva Marcus, Supreme Court; Dwight Pitcaithley, National Park Service; and Roy Rosenzweig, George Mason University. Members also suggested she speak with Allison Blakely and Joe Harris, Howard University, for additional suggestions.

**Q. Consideration of resolutions from Business Meeting:** No resolutions were presented at the annual Business Meeting on Saturday, January 10.

**R. Council members' committee assignments for 1998:** Mr. Miller reported that Mr. Fink would serve (ex officio) on the Executive Committee, Ms. Hata on the Teaching Division, and Ms. Young on the Professional Division. Upon recommendation by Mr. Miller, and motion by Mr. Katz and second by Ms. Martin, members unanimously agreed that the Finance Committee would continue as constituted with newly elected president-elect Mr. Darnton rotating on and immediate past president Caroline Bynum rotating off the committee.

The following represents committee appointments for 1998.

Executive Committee

Joseph C. Miller  
Joyce Appleby  
Robert Darnton  
Carla Rahn Phillips  
Stanley Katz  
*Leon Fink, ex officio*  
*Sandria Freitag, ex officio*

Finance Committee

Joseph C. Miller  
Joyce Appleby  
Robert Darnton  
Carla Rahn Phillips  
Douglas Greenberg  
*Sandria Freitag, ex officio*  
*Michael Grossberg, ex officio*  
*Randy Norell, ex officio*

Professional Division

Marilyn Young

Research Division

Cheryl Martin

Teaching Division

Nadine Hata

Committee on Affiliated Societies

Robert Darnton, chair (*president-elect serves as chair*)  
Colin Palmer

Committee on Committees

Robert Darnton, chair (*president-elect serves as chair*)

TFROGS

Emily Hill, chair

**S. New Business:** Members considered the following items: (1) *textbook prize*: Members voted to remove this item from the table [See item L.1.(a)]. Upon motion by Mr. Fink and second by Ms. Phillips, Council unanimously rescinded its original vote approving the textbook prize as submitted by Mr. Stearns at the Thursday Council session. Following discussion and upon motion by Mr. Fink and second by Ms. Phillips, Council unanimously referred to the Teaching Division a request to formulate a proposal for a textbook prize in U.S./world history for the K-12 level. Ms. Young stated that she hoped the division would consider a prize for the college level at a later date.



2. *Budget matters:* Ms. Freitag and Mr. Norell provided materials prepared for the Finance Committee in the form of a copy of the 1996-97 budget indicating the difference in dollars and percentage points between actual and the budget. Members agreed they could discuss budgetary questions on a Council listserv during the months prior to the spring meeting.

3. *1998 development work:* Members agreed to postpone implementation of the “Friends of the AHA” proposal approved at the Thursday session. Since Development Advisory Committee members had expressed concern about continuity of AHA leadership’s efforts, Mr. Miller reported that Ms. Appleby had agreed to remain on the DAC and work with Mr. Miller during his presidential year. Ms. Freitag called Council’s attention to Ms. Appleby’s contributions and extraordinary development work during her presidential year.

**T. Date of spring meeting:** Members selected May 31-June 1, 1998 as the dates of Council’s spring meeting in Washington D.C.

**U. Adjournment and Executive Session:** Upon motion by Mr. Darnton and second by Ms. Young, members adjourned at 11:40 a.m. to meet in executive session.

Recorded by  
Sharon K. Tune

**Copyright Transfer Forms for  
*AHR, Perspectives, and Pamphlets***

*Sample is for the American Historical Review*

Dear Author:

We would like to offer you an explanation of copyright law and our specific requests concerning your article. Attached for your signature is a letter agreement and a short copyright assignment form, suitable for filing with the U.S. Copyright Office.

Under current copyright law, the copyright in the “fixed expression” of your ideas is yours unless you transfer it away by contract. By contrast, under the law, all articles published in the *American Historical Review* are presented in a certain order and form, which we, the American Historical Association have the right to reproduce and distribute. This is copyright of the “collective work as a whole,” i.e., each issue of the *AHR*.

As the copyright owner of your article, you possess a bundle of rights, which may be transferred individually or as a group. To enable the Association to make the broadest possible print and electronic use of your article (including responding to reprint requests) **we request that you transfer your entire bundle of rights to us**. In return, we will grant back to you a “nonexclusive” license to do or authorize the doing of reproduction and distribution of your article at any point after the article has appeared in our journal, including the right to reprint or authorize others to reprint your article in a collection of essays. We also grant you permission to reprint your article in photoreproductions (Xerox copies) made for or used by nonprofit educational institutions. Distributing your own offprints is granted as a personal use.

For reprint requests we receive from **for-profit** publishers, the AHA will hold the copyright and will ask the publishers for the standard \$200 fee, which is equally divided between you and the Association. (Please note, any granting of permission by the AHA is subject to the restriction that reprints must be made in full and with all footnotes and other supporting materials, except by special arrangement with you.) It is the Association’s policy to release reprint rights to nonprofit users with no fee.

If you elect not to sign the enclosed letter agreement and assignment form and to retain the copyright on your article yourself, we will not be able to include your article in any future forms of the *AHR* other than print versions of the entire journal as a collective publication nor will be able to authorize reprints of your article.

The benefits that are available to you through transfer of your copyright to us: we service other persons seeking to reprint your article and facilitate wider dissemination of your approved version of your work, in print and electronic media. In other words, such persons can contact the publisher, us, and do not have to find you or your current address to get permission. If they do not seek permission or print or post your article in a distorted form, the Association can claim infringement of copyright.

Sincerely,  
Michael Grossberg

Date  
Author  
Author's Address  
City, State

AGREEMENT

re: Article Publication in the *American Historical Review*

Dear Author's Name:

The *American Historical Review* (hereafter, the "Journal"), a scholarly journal published by the American Historical Association (hereafter, the "AHA"), is pleased to accept for publication your **article/book review** entitled "XXX" (hereafter, the "**Article/Review**"). The Journal intends to publish the Article in Volume **XXX**, no. **XX**, which is currently scheduled to be produced in **XXX 1998** and distributed in **XXX 1998**.

The Journal and you agree to work together in good faith to resolve all differences regarding changes to the Article proposed by the Journal or you. The Journal generally resolves all issues of citation style and spelling in accordance with the *Chicago Manual of Style* and the Random House College Dictionary, in addition to its own house style.

You represent and warrant that the Article is an original work, not previously published in English, and that you have the legal right to offer it for publication in the *American Historical Review*. In addition, you represent and warrant that the work does not contain material that is defamatory, libelous, or obscene or material that infringes the copyright or any other legal right, contractual or otherwise, of others. To the best of your knowledge, publication of the Article will not otherwise subject the Journal to liability. You shall defend, indemnify, and hold the Journal and the AHA, and any third party licensees, harmless against any loss, liability, damage, cost or expense (including attorney's fees) arising out of or for the purpose of avoiding any suit, proceeding, claim, or demand, or the settlement thereof, which may be brought or made against the Journal or the AHA by reason of a breach of any of the representations or warranties made by you. Each of the foregoing warranties and representations shall survive the termination of this Agreement.

Each issue of the *American Historical Review* is registered with the United States Copyright Office as a serial publication. Individual contributions (i.e., articles, book reviews) are not generally registered; however, the Journal will register your Article, in the name of the American Historical Association, upon your written request.

Subject to the nonexclusive license set forth below, you hereby transfer and assign to the Journal all right, title, and interest, including all copyright, in and to the Article. You agree to execute any documents that may reasonably be necessary to allow the American Historical Association to exercise, perfect, or enforce any of the above rights.

In return for the rights granted above, the AHA hereby grants you, at any point after the Article has appeared in the Journal, a nonexclusive, royalty-free license to: (a) reproduce, distribute, perform, and display (and authorize others to do the same) the Article alone or as part of a book, anthology, or other collection of essays (with the exception of another academic or scholarly journal), in print, electronic, or other media now known or hereafter devised; (including, without limitation, print, electronic databases, CD-ROM, and World Wide Web uses); (b) to make or

authorize others to make photocopies or other similar reproductions of the Article for personal, classroom, or nonprofit educational use; and (c) to distribute your own offprints.

It is the Journal's policy to permit educational institutions to reproduce and distribute articles free of charge for nonprofit teaching and research purposes. The Journal will seek a fee from for-profit publishers (currently, \$200 per use), which fee will be shared equally between you and the Journal. All reproductions permitted by the Journal are required to reproduce the Article in full, along with all footnotes and other supporting materials, except with your express written permission.

The Journal will provide you with 100 offprints of your article free of charge. In addition, you may order additional reprints prior to publication, at a charge of \$60 per set of 100. An offprint order form will be sent to you shortly.

This Agreement shall be governed and construed in accordance with the laws of the District of Columbia applicable to agreements which are executed and fully performed within the District of Columbia, without regard to the District of Columbia's conflict of laws, principles, or rules.

The Parties shall negotiate in good faith to resolve any dispute or claim arising with respect to this Agreement. Should the Parties fail to promptly resolve their differences, the dispute shall be submitted to mediation under terms to be agreed upon by the Parties at the time. Should the Parties fail to agree upon a mediation procedure or should the mediation session be held and the parties fail to reach agreement, at the request of either party the dispute or claim shall be submitted to binding arbitration in the District of Columbia by a mutually agreeable third party in accordance with the rules of the American Arbitration Association then in effect.

This Agreement constitutes the entire understanding of the Parties and may be modified or terminated only by a written statement executed by both Parties. If any part of this Agreement is declared invalid or unenforceable by a court of competent jurisdiction, the remaining provisions shall continue in effect.

Thank you for allowing us to publish your Article. We look forward to working with you. If you have any questions concerning this Agreement, or if I can be of service at any time during the publication process, please do not hesitate to contact me.

On behalf of the American Historical Association:

On behalf of the Author:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Michael Grossberg, Editor

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Name Printed: \_\_\_\_\_

SSN: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

*AHR* Letterhead

As the sole author of an article known as “**XXX**” (hereafter, “the Article”), I hereby transfer, grant, and assign to the American Historical Association all rights, including all copyright, in and to the Article, in all media now known or hereafter devised (including, without limitation, print, electronic databases, CD-ROM, and World Wide Web uses).

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name (printed)

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Social Security Number

Permanent Address:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

I understand that I will have a nonexclusive license to reprint my article in any future book or collection of essays to appear after my article appears in the relevant *AHR* issue. I further understand that I will have a nonexclusive license to make photoreproductions of my article for personal, classroom, or nonprofit educational use.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

**for office use:**

**ISSUE and VOLUME:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Attachment 2**

**Policy on**

## **Exhibits, Advertisements, Mailing List Rentals, and Sales**

The American Historical Association has the responsibility as well as the right to exercise control over the content of its publications in order to fulfill its legal obligations, as stated in its Act of Incorporation to act "in the interest of American history and history in America." The Executive Director of the Association or her/his designee (such as the editor of the *American Historical Review*) shall be solely responsible for determining whether items exhibited, advertised, and/or sold under the auspices of the American Historical Association (including at the annual meeting, in AHA publications such as the *American Historical Review* and *Perspectives*, or in direct mailings to the AHA membership) meet these criteria. The AHA reserves the right to refuse any application for exhibit space, advertising, or sales, and to curtail or cancel any such exhibit, advertisement, or sale that does not conform to these guidelines.

### **I. General**

- a. All items exhibited advertised, and/or sold under the auspices of the American Historical Association are subject to the approval of the Executive Director or her/his designee. The AHA reserves the right to reject advertisements for any reason at any time.
- b. The AHA complies with the provisions of applicable federal laws prohibiting discrimination.
- c. Placement of advertisements in AHA publications, and the location of booths at the annual meeting's book exhibit will be at the AHA's discretion, although the purchasers' preferences will be met whenever possible.
- d. AHA publications do not accept advertising for candidates for elective office.
- e. The AHA will not accept items for exhibition, advertising, or sale that appear to libel, slander, or conflict with policies established by the AHA Council, its divisions, or committees.

### **II. Personnel Advertising (*Perspectives* and the annual meeting's Job Register)**

- a. Job discrimination is illegal, and open hiring on the basis of merit depends on fair practice in recruitment, thereby ensuring that all professionally qualified persons may obtain appropriate opportunities. Candidates should be evaluated exclusively on professional criteria and should not be discriminated against on the basis of sex, race, color, national origin, sexual orientation, religion, ideology, political affiliation, veteran status, age, physical handicap, or marital status, except in those cases in which federal law allows specific preference in hiring.
- b. The AHA will not accept a job listing that (1) contains wording that either directly or indirectly links sex, race, color, national origin, sexual orientation, ideology, political affiliation, age, physical handicap, or marital status to a specific job offer; or (2) contains wording requiring applicants to submit special materials for the sole purpose of

- identifying the applicant's sex, race, color, national origin, sexual orientation, ideology, political affiliation, veteran status, age, physical handicap, or marital status.
- c. The AHA retains the right to refuse or edit all discriminatory statements from copy submitted to the Association that is not consistent with these guidelines or with the principles of Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964. The AHA accepts advertisements from academic institutions under censure by the American Association of University Professors (AAUP), but clearly identifies their status.
  - d. The AHA does make an exception to the criteria listed under II (b) in three unique cases: (1) open listings for minority vita banks that are clearly not linked with specific jobs, fields, or specializations; (2) ads that require religious identification or affiliation for consideration for the position, a preference that is allowed to religious institutions under federal law; and (3) fellowship advertisements.

### **III. Liability**

- a. The decision to allow items to be exhibited, advertised, and/or sold under the auspices of the American Historical Association does not necessarily constitute endorsement or approval of any product or service advertised, or any point of view, standard, or opinion presented therein.
- b. For advertisements, the advertiser and/or advertising agency assume liability for all ad content, including text preparation and illustrations. It is understood that the advertiser and/or advertising agency will indemnify and hold the publisher harmless from and against any loss, expense, or other liability resulting from any suits, including actions for libel, breach of warranty, negligence, product liability, misrepresentation, fraud, violation of privacy, plagiarism, copyright infringement, and any other claims or suits whatsoever that may arise from publication of such advertisement.
- c. The AHA will not be bound by any term(s) or condition(s) that an advertiser or exhibitor includes on order forms or invoices unless it has agreed in writing to such term(s) or condition(s).
- d. Other than the return of any charge that has been paid, the AHA is not liable for any alleged loss or damages if an advertisement is omitted for any reason.
- e. Advertiser claims for errors will be decided on a case-by-case basis with discounts offered for the advertisement in question or on the advertiser's next order provided it is determined that the AHA made the error and that the error seriously affected the advertiser.

Approved by the AHA Council, January 8, 1998.

**Statement on Intellectual Diversity by the  
Coalition of History Editors for Publishing in the Future**

Changes in the electronic medium present significant challenges and extraordinary opportunities to scholars and students in history. As editors of history journals, we are challenged to address change in support of our readers and the scholarly community. In turn, we challenge the organizations that provide electronic archiving of journals, the online delivery of journals' contents, and the computerized search engines to include the broadest representation of historical fields.

Strong evidence today points to the absence in the online medium of broad areas of historical inquiry. Journals covering area studies, women's studies, and other vital thematic areas have been neglected in the fast-paced changes which have seen entire runs of the printed medium transformed into electronic formats.

Ironically, technical progress may turn out to represent a backward step for the historical profession. We have been energized in the last three decades thanks in great part to an expansion of publication outlets dedicated to the histories of peoples beyond the United States, to the historical processes of heretofore understudied groups everywhere, and to new approaches and methods. The expanded and enriched intellectual plane of the recent past will be severely impoverished if organizations—for-profit and nonprofit alike—fail to provide the electronic versions of what scholars and students have available today in print. We need a strategy of broad inclusivity in collection, conversion, and delivery services.

As journal editors, we urge electronic publishers and aggregators to pursue goals and policies that reconstitute in the electronic medium the same or better access that our readers currently enjoy via the paper medium. Otherwise, the current orphaning process of journals in area studies and in specialized themes will soon diminish the historical profession at large.

Approved by Council January 8, 1998.



### Statement on Excellent Classroom Teaching of History

*The Teaching Division and the Council of the American Historical Association endorse the criteria presented in the following statement as an appropriate basis for evaluating the efforts of institutions at all levels of instruction to establish the prerequisite conditions for historians to provide excellent instruction. There are, of course, a number of important issues for which there are many viable solutions that make specific criteria, at least at this point, seem inadvisable. For example, this statement does not address which courses should form the basis of historical study or provide such specific measures as a precise student-faculty ratio in the classroom. Instead, the Teaching Division and the Council expect faculty and administrators to consider together the areas where their institutions meet, exceed, or fall short of these baseline criteria for excellence. Evidence and analysis rather than unsupported assertion should characterize these discussions. The American Historical Association, its staff, elected officers, and members stand ready to help departments work through these issues and to support historians in instances where these criteria are clearly not implemented by an institution. The statement was drafted by David Trask (Guilford Technical Community Coll.), AHA Council member sitting on the Teaching Division 1994–97.*

American citizens are currently engaged in wide-ranging debates on educational policies affecting all venues where teaching and learning occur. These discussions have or can have significant impact on the teaching of history and, therefore, on the nation and its understanding of history in the coming decades. Some of these discussions seek to define the course work done by students by prescribing curriculums. Others focus on financial support for education and can lead to decisions to downsize departments by increasing instructional loads and class sizes or by mandating new formats for instruction. There are debates that address the relationship among different teaching settings by mandating, for example, that course work taken at community colleges automatically transfer to public senior colleges. States and regions are also exploring the expansion of new modes of instruction such as Internet use. All of these issues and others ultimately affect the environment for learning history—both its content and its perspectives on the past.

The need to reevaluate instruction—both its content and its techniques—is not a new development for historians. Teaching historians have a long, effective record of discussing and analyzing different classroom settings to assure that they are delivering the best historical understandings with the most effective teaching methods. Traditionally this analysis has been done informally by individuals or formally by departments; few efforts have reached beyond the boundaries of home campuses. In periods of strong institutional budgets, numerous students, and a supportive public, these efforts were sufficient. Recently the environment for teaching has changed. Legislatures are seeking undefended dollars for new programs; citizen interest in career-specific education is increasing; there are efforts to prescribe what should be taught in the classroom.

Historians must respond to this interest in educational assessment by developing approaches that measure the development of historical thinking and knowledge. Historians need to address these challenges by developing clear criteria that inform decision makers—both on and beyond campus—of those characteristics of historical study that are fundamental to students’

formulation of meaningful historical perspectives. By facilitating the assessment of proposed budget realignments and the evaluation of new teaching technologies, these criteria will help society determine the long-term impact of policy alternatives on the nation's sense of the historical and on student abilities to deal with social and political data and issues. By adopting these criteria, departments will be able to clarify for themselves how well, individually and collectively, they are achieving their teaching goals. Traditional measures of instructional quality—basic teaching skills, faculty availability to students, a well thought-out syllabus—are necessary but by themselves no longer sufficient for assuring that the conditions for effective teaching and learning exist. Although the missions of educational institutions may vary, the American Historical Association affirms that legislatures, governing boards, school administrators, and historians must work together to ensure that the criteria listed below are clearly present in their history courses for both majors and nonmajors and are supported by the institution's operations and environment.

**1. Course Content.** All courses must contain sufficient factual material to enable students to understand the central themes and issues present in the course. Factual material must be based on the most recent research findings. Historical research has expanded our understanding of the past in dramatic ways over the last 20 years, and this process continues. History instructors must have opportunity and motivation to integrate relevant results in their course content. Historical facts should be treated, however, as the beginning rather than the final goal of historical study. Courses must explicitly present the analytical concepts characteristic of historical study. These concepts not only underlie the questions that historians ask of the past, they help historians organize evidence, evaluate its relation to other evidence, and determine the relative importance of different events in shaping the past—and the present. These concepts address sequence, change over time, cause and effect, the role of factors such as culture and technology in shaping the history of the period, and the importance of the insights of all major social and cultural groupings in the society being studied. A true examination of the past requires attention to the full range of human activities and institutions, including politics, society, culture, economy, intellectual trends, and international relations.

**2. Historical Thinking.** Textbooks and well-delivered lectures sometimes give students the impression that the study of history is the quest for the single correct answer, because these end products of study conceal the historian's struggle with the indeterminacy associated with conflicting evidence and multiple viewpoints. For this reason excellent historical courses go beyond the presentation of content and analytical concepts to provide students with multiple opportunities to do the work of the historian. Students need to be aware of the kinds of sources used by historians, and they should become adept at extracting meaning from these sources, comparing their findings with other evidence from the period, formulating conclusions about the issue under study, and testing these ideas against additional evidence and the ideas of other historians. Students should be taught to think historically, to have the opportunity to develop their own historical interpretations, because this transforms their formal study of the past into a true understanding of the ways that conflicting evidence, alternative perspectives, and society's concerns shape our evaluations of the past. For these reasons students should be given frequent opportunities for discussion and writing in order to learn to practice the art of interpretation and to see the implications of their own analyses. These experiences should be progressive with the work at each level or grade, building on the studies that students carried out in prior courses. Historical thinking also contributes to the important educational goals of producing a thoughtful citizenry and of providing individuals with the analytical skills suitable to a wide range of jobs.

**3. Classroom Environment.** The classroom environment must actively promote the learning of history. This includes the presence of an adequate supply of relevant and up-to-date

maps and audiovisual materials as well as the necessary equipment. The number of students per class must not exceed the number that can carry on meaningful interactions over course issues. The reliance on large lecture sections must be accompanied by discussion sections that are small enough so that the instructor can realistically expect oral participation by all students. Alternative forms of instruction, such as television or the Internet, must also require significant communication between students and faculty and among students themselves. In addition students must be presented with the special issues related to the use of these technologies such as “visual literacy” with regard to film and “authority” in the evaluation of Internet sources. Instructor loads must not exceed the ability of the teacher to offer excellent instruction and to keep up-to-date with the latest research. Adjunct faculty should be held to the same expectations as full-time faculty and should receive the same institutional supports as faculty with continuing appointments. Although it is reasonable to expect that some historians will hold positions that involve duties in addition to teaching history, these instructors must be required to meet the same instructional standards as full-time teaching historians and must be supported in their work in the same way as full-time historians.

**4. Evaluation of Student Performance.** Although objective testing may be useful to prompt students to read assignments, it should never represent the bulk of student evaluation or be the final measure of student success. Because the work of the excellent history course revolves around analysis and interpretation, student evaluation must be based on written or other work that allows students to develop and present their own analyses—on tests, oral presentations, papers, or group projects. This should include student research projects in which the students seek out and weigh appropriate factual information and use it to answer significant historical questions at a level of difficulty appropriate to their level of study.

Endorsed by AHA Teaching Division, November 4, 1997, and Approved by AHA Council, January 8, 1998.

### AHA Policy on Prizes

1. The Research Division shall serve as the policy oversight body of the Association for book prizes. Similarly the Teaching Division shall oversee teaching awards, and the Professional Division awards for professional service.
2. AHA book prizes should be for broad fields of history and not limited to any field covered by a specialist society except by agreement with such a society.  
  
The Council has established the following priorities for the development of new prizes:
  - a. More topical and thematic prizes, comparative in focus.
  - b. More prizes for service to the profession and in teaching.
  - c. Prizes in specific geographic and functional areas not currently covered, such as African history and psychohistory.
3. No prize should be established by a living person to bear his or her own name during his or her lifetime.
4. Funding of prizes should include provision for costs of administering the prize. In general, new awards should not be created that entail expenditure of the Association's general funds.
5. People proposing new awards should be encouraged to fund subventions. Presses would recommend manuscripts that they consider of high quality but would be unlikely to publish without subvention.
6. Prize awards should not be split except under unusual circumstances, and there will be no honorable mentions, except in the case of the Asher Teaching Award.
7. Prize award committees should be composed of at least three members of the Association. With the establishment of a new prize, after an initial term, the terms will be staggered.
8. Prizes and awards should be announced and conferred in as public and formal a setting as possible--preferably either the annual business meeting or the annual evening session for the presidential address. A strong effort should be made to encourage recipients to receive awards in person.
9. The Council endorses all existing prizes in their present form.

Approved by Council, December 27, 1992; amended January 11, 1998

## Minutes of the Council Meeting, May 31-June 1, 1998

The Council met in the Caucus Boardroom of One Washington Circle Hotel in Washington, D.C., on Sunday, May 31, and Sunday, June 1, 1998. President Joseph C. Miller called the meeting to order at 2 p.m. on May 31. Present were: Mr. Miller; Robert Darnton, president-elect; Joyce Appleby, immediate past president; vice presidents Carla Rahn Phillips (Professional Division), Stanley N. Katz (Research Division), and Leon Fink (Teaching Division); Council members Douglas Greenberg, Nadine Hata, Emily Hill, Cheryl Martin, Colin Palmer, and Marilyn Young; Sandria B. Freitag, executive director; Michael Grossberg, editor, *AHR*; Randy Norell, controller; Sharon K. Tune, assistant director, administration; Noralee Frankel, assistant director on women, minorities, and teaching; and Robert Townsend, manager, information systems and communications. AHA Counsel Albert J. Beveridge also attended a portion of the meeting.

Mr. Miller welcomed Council members and introduced members of the AHA staff attending the meeting. He reported that Mr. Norell had been re-appointed as controller for a second five-year term.

**1. Approval of the Minutes of January 8 and 11, 1998:** Ms. Tune noted corrections to two sections of the minutes: section F should indicate that Ms. Appleby delivered the Finance Committee report, and section H.2 should correct the spelling of Ed Ayers' last name. Upon motion by Mr. Greenberg and second by Ms. Phillips, the minutes were unanimously approved as corrected.

**2. Consent calendar:** Consideration of two items was removed from the Consent Calendar since materials had not been available for review prior to the meeting: A. *Composition of the 2000 Program Committee* and C. *Appointment of the 2001 Program Committee chair*. Both are discussed in the Research Division's report (agenda item 11.B.)

Upon motion by Ms. Young and second by Ms. Hill, the following items were unanimously approved under the consent calendar: B. *Research Division recommendation to approve AHR Board of Editors members*: Confirming the Research Division's selection of R. Stephen Humphreys, University of California at Santa Barbara; Margaret Jacob, University of Pennsylvania; Robert Moeller, University of California at Irvine; and Maria Todorova, University of Florida. These appointments bring the board membership total to twelve as approved by Council on January 2, 1997. Three "classes" of four board members each serve staggered three-year terms.

D. *Approval of 1999 Local Arrangements Committee chair*: Confirming appointment of Howard F. Gillette, Jr., George Washington University, as 1999 Local Arrangements Committee chair.

**3. President's Report:** Mr. Miller discussed: A. *Initiative on Affiliates*: Mr. Miller noted that this initiative was the emphasis for his presidential year, and that he and Mr. Darnton had been in touch since several of the activities would take more than one year to complete. Mr. Miller reported that he had met with AHA staff three times, and that much of the year involved planning and revising processes. Changes made for the 1999 Annual Meeting include two adjustments in the printed program: (1) typefont for the affiliates' section will be increased to the same point size as the number session listings, and (2) signage will be provided for all sessions, AHA and affiliate. Mr. Townsend stated that details such as papers and participants would be posted for each session.

Mr. Miller remarked that the longer-term goal was to find solutions that benefit both the AHA and affiliates. He called members' attention to the two "President's Desk" articles included

in the agenda book. He also reported that an affiliate listserv would be established during the fall and would be used by affiliates and the Committee on Affiliated Societies to develop an agenda for the annual meeting with affiliates at the 1999 Annual Meeting. Mr. Darnton will moderate the listserv and chair the meeting in January. From that meeting the AHA and affiliates can plan joint initiatives. Mr. Darnton reported that he had been surprised at how few responses there had been to a request to join the listserv considering the rather spirited feedback about annual meeting issues. Ms. Appleby suggested reissuing the request in another mailing or including a reminder in the newsletter. Mr. Miller reported that he had also been in touch with several affiliates, including the Conference on Latin American History and the World History Association, as well as Sally Marks, who had written Council about subject coverage on the annual meeting program and problems with the Beer Prize (see January 8, 1998 minutes, section P.1.). In concluding his remarks about the affiliate initiative, Mr. Miller stated that he believed the AHA was on track to establish improved communications.

B. *Award(s) for Scholarly Distinction*: Consideration of the Award(s) for Scholarly Distinction for 1998 was removed from the agenda since the nominating jury had not yet completed its work. Staff will forward materials to Council for mail vote during the summer months and prepare letters of notification for Mr. Miller's signature.

C. *General report on President's activity*: Mr. Miller summarized other presidential initiatives which included introduction of two Council listservs. He remarked Council would need to discuss what kind of business should be considered by the full Council via the listserv, and what should continue to be handled by the Executive Committee. He noted that he had drafted a listserv protocol for consideration during "New Business" (agenda item 12.B.).

Mr. Miller also reported on visits to the AHA headquarters in late February and March. During the March visit, he spent part of the day with John Hammer of the National Humanities Alliance and called upon Senate and House of Representatives offices. During the spring months he had been in touch with Mark Kornbluh of H-NET. He briefly discussed one or two problems that developed with the advent of the AHA's department chairs' listserv as part of the Institutional Services Program (ISP). Mr. Miller reported that H-NET had also planned to develop a similar listserv, and was upset to learn about the AHA's initiative. Ms. Freitag reported that the listserv had developed from a request at the January 1998 department chairs' luncheon and that H-NET had proposed a joint listserv some six months earlier. After careful consideration, staff had regrettably declined to create a joint listserv on the following grounds: (1) It had been proposed by members of the AHA's ISP as a new service for members. Since revenues from ISP serve as the backbone of the publications stream, this response to a request was viewed as very important. (2) The request was made that the listserv be confidential for chairs and AHA staff, and this would be contrary to H-NET practices. (3) The refusal of H-NET to impose any organizational policies on listserv moderators (e.g. recent electioneering issues) would make it impossible to work with moderators as parallel to *Perspective's* contributing editors, in ways that ensure AHA institutional commitments and goals are met. Ms. Freitag described ISP benefits for newer Council members, and noted that listserv participants had informally surveyed themselves in May and had expressed a high level of satisfaction, particularly at small campuses.

Mr. Miller summarized additional business discussed on the Council listserv: approval of editorial revisions to the *Statement on Standards*, agreement to join a lawsuit on the Alger Hiss case as recommended by the Research Division, approval of the revision of candidate biography materials, reappointment of Mr. Norell to an additional five-year term as AHA controller, acceptance of San Francisco as the 2002 meeting site, and clarification of the "total return policy" approved at January meetings.

In concluding his report, Mr. Miller noted that there were two items still remaining: (1) developing a procedure to revise membership categories on the membership renewal form, and (2) revising procedures used by the Committee on Committee (ConC) to recommend members

for appointive offices. As a “veteran” of the ConC process, Mr. Miller stated a review of the process could mean less work for the staff and increase efficiency for committee members.

**4. Executive Director's Report:** Ms. Freitag provided additional comments to her written report: *A. Update on programmatic initiatives: (1) Grants:* Ms. Freitag noted that the NEH survey course project had been funded, although at a slightly lower level than requested in the application. She reported that the AHA should be able to accomplish what had been planned; however, there were additional plans built into the original proposal that would move the AHA forward on the web site and the kinds of materials it could offer teachers and the general public if additional funds were made available from the Disney gift. She noted that three “clusters” of faculty were in place and already hard at work, and pointed out reviewers’ evaluations in the agenda book. With regard to the Ford grant, Ms. Freitag noted that there was no reason not to assume the AHA would receive funding, and that final review of the AHA’s application was forthcoming within the week. She also noted that both the NEH and Ford projects had interesting components. As a result of the NEH grant, the AHA would be able to see what it could do around clusters of faculty in different parts of the country as well as enhance the AHA’s web site. As a result of the Ford proposal, the AHA would be able to bring together six different national organizations to work on the connections between world history in the discipline and area studies on a national level (rather than be limited to campus-based activities). She remarked that both projects allowed the AHA to move forward intellectual agendas and to foster intellectual communication, and that the planning process had often been exhilarating. Each organization appointed a representative to a group planned to serve as a steering committee, but members had become so involved that they had volunteered to act as a program committee as well. Ms. Freitag will circulate the project’s final description as soon as available. Ms. Freitag also reported on the Spencer/Carnegie grants brought to the AHA by former Teaching Division vice president Peter Stearns, Carnegie Mellon University. She noted that after a first, planning conference in November, the AHA would need to decide if it wanted to continue as a sponsor for a second, larger conference. In concluding her remarks about projects and funding, Ms. Freitag noted two additional projects would be reported on during the publications section of the agenda. [See agenda item 9.C.]

*B. Part-time/adjunct progress report:* Ms. Freitag reported on discussions at the spring meeting of the American Conference of Learned Societies (ACLS), and noted that a number of new organizations had signed on to follow-up activities to the part-time/adjunct conference: American Academy of Religion, American Anthropological Association, American Chemical Society, American Musicology Society, and College Art Association. She noted that the next phase of the project would bring the September 1997 conference statement to the attention to boards, accrediting societies, and university administrations. Ms. Appleby suggested adding members of higher education committees of state legislature to the distribution list. Ms. Freitag concurred, and reported on two bills now in the California legislature. Ms. Appleby noted that at one point the AHA had been interested in clustering various levels of faculty in a teaching alliance, and suggested that she, Ms. Hata, and Gary Reichard, California State University, Long Beach, could develop a model in Southern California.

Ms. Freitag asked members how the AHA could begin to connect this initiative to the AHA membership. Mr. Katz remarked that this would be a trickier prospect since not all universities view it as a quality issue but rather as a labor issue. Ms. Phillips concurred, noting that members of the Professional Division had probably been the most sensitive to this point. She reported that the division had talked about this issue to some extent, and had decided to refer to it explicitly in the “good practices” document brought for Council’s approval during the division’s report. She stated that the division focused on the quality of history instruction issue. Ms. Freitag noted that the American Association of University Professors (AAUP) had been one of the more active organizations and that the larger group had worked hard to keep them involved but at a

certain distance. Ms. Freitag reported that the Modern Language Association board had believed in the project so strongly that they had provided extra staffing in the MLA office specifically to support the implementation process and noted that the AHA might not need to expend the \$1,000 approved at the January 1998 meeting for implementation projects.

*C. Connections between AHA and larger publics:* Ms. Freitag noted that information provided in this section of Council's agenda book was for background, and moved to the proposal for collaboration between the National Museum of American History (NMAH) and the AHA. Ms. Frankel reported that the proposal came about from a conversation with the NMAH assistant director on curatorial affairs who had informed her that the Museum planned to propose six themes to accomplish two important goals. One would give the museum coherence about how and where the different exhibits fit together, and the second would give the museum coherence of collections. When the assistant director mentioned the plan to Ms. Frankel, she responded that the AHA might be of assistance and the museum staff had been quite receptive. From these conversations a proposal had developed calling for AHA staff to work with museum staff in identifying scholars to meet with museum staff in small workshops to talk about the themes and to attend a series of national conferences. AHA staff would assist in writing grant proposals, which would include funding support for AHA staff time to identify and to contact scholars for each of the themes. Also included in the grant proposal would be a jointly sponsored senior fellowship at the NMAH. With Teaching Division and Council approval, the AHA would cosponsor the project and provide publicity.

Mr. Greenberg remarked that he did not understand the planned outcome of the process, and asked if six new exhibits or input into current exhibits was planned after the six conferences on the six themes were held. Ms. Frankel replied that the museum hoped to accomplish three things: (1) to develop a few new exhibits, although they would be relatively small, but more importantly, (2) to provide connective tissue to what is already there, and (3) to give coherence to the collections. Mr. Greenberg stated that it was still not clear to him since collecting policies were completely separate issues from connective tissues for current or new exhibits. Ms. Frankel noted that AHA staff would contribute names of scholars and make preliminary phone calls, and would also lend its name. She remarked that the AHA might face resistance, and briefly recounted the controversy surrounding the Enola Gay exhibit.

Ms. Hata stated that she had been intrigued by the proposal but from a different perspective, and asked if others outside NMAH would be able to benefit from the process. Mr. Darnton agreed, and noted that a tremendous amount could be accomplished by working with all types of museums. Ms. Freitag stated that AHA staff had talked about a series of articles in *Perspectives* authored by historians like Eric Foner about how you can take training for research and translate it into ideas that would benefit museums. She remarked this could also be a way to tap into AHA member expertise. Mr. Greenberg asked if there were any costs to the AHA for the project. Ms. Frankel replied that her staff time should be the only cost, and that should be no more than three weeks. She noted that the proposal when funded would give the AHA a grant of \$3,000-\$5,000 toward underwriting her time. Mr. Fink stated that he was excited about the potential for a site that was so important to history education for the public. Ms. Appleby, noting that she served on the Smithsonian's board, pointed out that the Smithsonian director had been on the job for more than a year now, and that she thought there would be new opportunities for the AHA to be influential.

Mr. Miller asked Ms. Frankel how the project would be defined in terms of the AHA structure. Ms. Frankel replied that it would be a Teaching Division project, both because the division had raised it but also because it is charged with the dissemination of knowledge. Ms. Young stated that the division could call upon Council members who are Americanists. Upon motion by Mr. Katz and second by Ms. Young, Council unanimously endorsed AHA participation in the project and requested further definition of contributions and responsibilities of the various elements within the AHA.



5. **Finance Committee's Report:** Mr. Miller presented the report of the Finance Committee, which met at the AHA headquarters office from 9:00 a.m. to 12 noon on May 31. He stated that the committee had agreed that the materials provided by the staff, and included in Council's agenda book, included virtually all the information sought by the committee, and that additional information had been furnished about cost centers. Mr. Miller reported on the committee's meeting, noting that members had worked through previous minutes and had developed standard procedures for future meetings. Council members agreed to begin with a general discussion about the current fiscal year, and then move to Finance Committee recommendations for the 1998-99 fiscal year before taking action on the proposed budget.

A. *1997-98 Fiscal Year budget:* Mr. Miller noted that the committee had reviewed third quarter results, and that members had agreed that the report was entirely satisfactory and that projections were online. He congratulated Ms. Freitag and Mr. Norell for their part in creating much improved reports. Ms. Freitag thanked Mr. Miller, and began her remarks with comments about the "exit" report of Caroline Bynum who rotated off Council in January. Ms. Freitag pointed out that the Association was not in deficit as stated by Ms. Bynum. She added that the Association's budget was built upon the principles that (a) the AHA was a membership-based organization that should focus on member services; and (b) that the priorities and work environment were those of a not-for-profit organization. Following advice from finance professionals specializing in these kinds of organizations, staff focused on increasing revenues through expanded member services, rather than cutting (which immediately threatened member services). Ms. Freitag noted that Council members had been provided with projections for the remainder of the fiscal year as well as the third-quarter report.

In discussing the status report of the current fiscal year, Mr. Katz asked whether it might be helpful to include a cost-benefit chart, one that would illustrate what happened when you subtract "pile 1" from "pile 2." Mr. Miller concurred, citing as an example *AHR* expenses and revenues. Ms. Freitag responded that she had not done this since Council, divisions, and committees, unlike the *Review*, do not bring in money and that the only revenue identified directly with the *AHR* was advertising and institutional subscriptions. It was impossible to know what proportion of dues should be seen as *AHR* subscriptions. Ms. Freitag and Mr. Townsend agreed that it would be relatively easy to create a bar chart of more general comparisons. In concluding the discussion of the 1997-98 budget report, Ms. Appleby reported that she thought a majority of the Finance Committee had felt containing costs was as important as raising revenues. Ms. Freitag noted that every cost-center manager works hard on cost containment, both in building the budget and in anticipating and reviewing quarterly numbers.

B. *Proposals from the Finance Committee re the 1998-99 budget:* On behalf of the Finance Committee, Mr. Miller presented the following recommendations:

(1) **Proposals for dues' changes in two ways:** First, dues adjustments in incremental increases for a five-year period and second, adding a new top category of "contributing member." *Dues increase:* In January 1996, Council had discussed the possibility of changing the approach to dues increases, and had agreed that moving from significant increases periodically to modest increases each year would be an experiment worth trying. To allow a sufficient "recovery" period from the last dues increase in 1994, Council had asked that the new incremental process be postponed until 1998.

The Finance Committee proposed a five-year experiment that would: (1) incorporate a 2.3 percent rate hike of all membership categories (based on an increase that would roughly approximate the cost of living); the percentage would remain constant for the five years of the experiment. Staff noted that this method of calculating had the advantage of keeping the increases quite small for the lowest-income categories in the AHA's scale. (2) yield projected revenues of \$838,935 in the first year. Staff noted that the first -year revenues were underestimated because increases would not be realized until part-way through the fiscal year. A

possible drop in membership of up to 2 percent was incorporated, and adjustments were made for the impact of accrual reporting. In the second year, staff noted that projected revenues would be around \$869,220. (3) recover any loss by the third year, with revenues around \$890,928. At the end of five years, the experiment would be evaluated to see if it should be continued. The pattern of membership renewals would be evaluated as well as the relationship of cost-per-member and membership revenues (especially for the bottom two categories).

*Adding new top category of “contributing member”:* The committee also recommended that a new top category be added for those interested in contributing a larger amount of money each year. This would only involve one more “box” on the membership form, with a heading of “contributing member” and the amount, \$150. Staff noted that the change had originated from suggestions from AHA members with higher incomes than those specified in the AHA’s scale of dues.

In discussing the two proposals, Ms. Hata questioned how Council should inform the membership. Mr. Darnton noted that Council owed members a frank report that discussed the experiment. Ms. Phillips suggested a newsletter article with a graph that would compare the dues structures of various organizations. Mr. Miller agreed, suggesting that several examples could be included in his September “President’s Desk” column. Following additional discussion, Council unanimously approved the Finance Committee’s two-part recommendation for dues adjustments.

(2) Proposals for annual meeting fee increases in two ways: First, increases in registration fees for attendees and second, an increase in the fee for exhibitors: *Attendee registration fees:* The committee proposed (a) \$10 increases for members and non-members, increasing amounts paid for preregistration and registration and maintaining the \$15 differential to encourage preregistration, and (b) \$5 increase for students/unemployed, with a \$5 differential maintained between preregistration and registration at the meeting. *Exhibitor fee:* The committee proposed increasing the exhibitors’ booth fee from \$950 to \$1,050.

Following discussion, Council unanimously approved the Finance Committee’s two-part proposal to increase annual meeting fees.

(3) Proposal for add-on fee for publications: The Finance Committee recommended a Publications Advisory Committee (PAC) proposal to create a program for individual members that parallels the Institutional Services Program, called the Member Services Program (MSP). For a small added fee, that would be earmarked to support additional publications production, the AHA would offer members a subscription to all AHA publications (pamphlets and directories) that are not included in the base membership (*AHR*, *Perspectives*, and the annual meeting *Program*). Since the logistics means this would kick in with the renewals received in January 1999, the staff would monitor the reactions over the last six months of the 1998-99 fiscal year, and then plan budget allocations, etc. beginning with FY 1999-2000. The benefits could be that more members would discover how valuable the publications program was, and this MSP revenue could provide a small “research and development” fund for publications. Given the high cost of the *Directory of History Departments*, the Finance Committee recommended a two-tier structure: one plan with the *Directory*, priced at \$70, and one without the *Directory*, priced at \$35. The program would be advertised through in-house publications and on the membership renewal form at little or no additional cost.

Ms. Freitag noted that the staff would need to monitor two unknowns: First, possible lost revenue from direct sales of AHA publications to members, and second, loss in the Institutional Services Program if departments substitute the MSP to receive all publications. Given the overall institutional goals addressed by the MSP and the ability to monitor the program for the first six months before shaping any budget decisions on responses, the PAC and Finance Committee recommended approval.

Following discussion, Council unanimously approved the Finance Committee recommendation to create a Membership Service Program.

Mr. Darnton noted that he had discussed with the Finance Committee the creation of a membership directory with each member permitted a 25-word-or-less statement on their specialty. He stated that he had seen a similar directory in other organizations and had found it very useful. Mr. Miller noted that the Finance Committee had been enthusiastic, and had asked Mr. Darnton to bring a more clearly defined proposal to the January meeting.

(4) Method and calculation for determining investment return: The Finance Committee brought for final approval a methodology for the “total return” calculation for the AHA portfolio, noting that the policy would be based upon conservative calculations of its “total” value. Ms. Freitag noted that the total-return policy was recommended and approved by Council on June 7, 1997, and that the committee’s current recommendation dealt with the method for calculating that policy. If approved, the calculation would govern the disposition of portfolio earnings and supersede all previous Council methodologies relating to this subject. She also noted that the policy, which relates to the operating budget, was accompanied by a similar Council decision affecting the assignment of monies in support of the AHA small grants programs connected to the Beveridge, Kraus, Littleton-Griswold, and Schmitt funds. Ms. Freitag reminded Council members that for the grants programs purpose, the Council had approved at its June 1997 meeting a Finance Committee recommendation to allocate 2.5 percent of a three-year rolling average of the earnings of each fund for distribution to grant recipients. Amounts of up to an additional .5 percent were allocated to cover direct and indirect administrative costs related to the awarding of grants.

For the portfolio’s investment return, an amount determined by the following methodology would be devoted to the annual operating budget: a rolling average calculated on the basis of the auditor’s report of the market value of the portfolio as of June 30th on each of the previous three years. It would be calculated during preparation of the budget for the next fiscal year. The average would be calculated at 5 percent of the total value: (a) on the two unrestricted-designated funds, i.e. the Endowment and Schmitt funds, the 5 percent can be calculated and drawn directly. (Legally, the provisions of these funds were determined by Council and so would be superseded by the new policy.) (b) on the three board-designated funds that were labeled “temporarily restricted,” i.e., the Littleton-Griswold, Beveridge, and Matteson funds, the 5 percent will also be calculated on all non-restricted funds. (Legally, there are phrases in the Matteson will and oral reports to Council regarding the intentions of the Beveridge and Littleton-Griswold widows, to use these funds for broadly identified areas: Matteson--bibliographic work; Beveridge--in support of American history; and Littleton-Griswold--in support of American history; for legal history). Even though these funds have not been drawn from the investment pool, the donors’ restrictions have been satisfied by previous AHA operating expenditures toward these three purposes. Thus the funds should be reclassified as “board-designated” rather than “restricted” as part of the portfolio. They therefore can serve as a basis for a 5 percent calculation. On advice of finance professionals not included in the base for calculations would be the portions of the funds designated “permanently” restricted (i.e. original gift sums), unless the donors indicate in writing to the AHA that these funds may be used for calculation purposes.

Following discussion, Council unanimously approved the Finance Committee’s recommendation for the methodology described above.

(5) Redesignation of funds to savings account: Mr. Miller presented the Finance Committee’s recommendation to fund future capital expenses. The 1995 Finance Committee had discussed ways to build up the AHA’s capital reserve and set a goal of \$10,000 each year for five years. Since current Finance Committee members were reluctant to designate development money toward this purpose, the staff developed and the Finance Committee recommended to Council a two-part proposal targeting current and potential life members for support of the building fund. First, a fundraising drive among current life members focused especially on capital costs and featuring the building and its history. There would be one mailing

each year for five years, and any contributions realized from the campaign would be directed into the capital reserve fund. Second, a recruitment drive of new life members would be conducted among those who have been members for forty years (since 1958). Ms. Freitag noted that this cohort of 463 members might respond well to becoming life members, and that their decision to do so would not represent a significant drain on future resources of the AHA. She also noted that just four responses per year would yield the additional \$10,000 goal for that year. Ms. Freitag reported that the current policy, established some years ago by Council, segregated life membership payments to the Endowment Fund. Approval of a five-year plan would redirect those funds for the specified five years into the capital reserve fund. At the end of five years, the previous policy would obtain once again.

Following discussion, Council unanimously approved the Finance Committee's recommendation to redesignate life member dues to a capital fund savings account.

*C. Approval of 1998-99 Fiscal Year budget:* With the approval of the preceding revenue components, the Finance Committee recommended, and Council unanimously approved, the 1998-99 budget as proposed. Mr. Miller also reported that the Finance Committee had approved the executive director's salary-pool recommendations for 1998-99. The total included cost-of-living increases as well as merit or equity pay adjustments for staff salaries.

*D. Approval of new methodology for book prizes:* At its May 1995 meeting, Council implemented a policy of self-supporting book prizes to ensure that the principals would not be invaded, and directed that no award was to be made if the endowment's income was not sufficient to support a minimum award of \$250 and administrative costs. Mr. Miller reported that Council had reacted to the spending down of principals, since most awards were \$1,000 regardless of the endowment's size. He noted that the "pendulum" had now swung the other way, and that the policy had begun to cost the Association in terms of public relations. Mr. Miller stated that he had thought to examine the award amounts within the context of the total return policy (5 percent of a three-year moving average of funds available). After reviewing numbers supplied by Mr. Norell comparing actual and projected 1997 award amounts, he noted that application of the total-return policy would only have cost an additional \$6,000. The Finance Committee therefore had thought it worth the investment to modify the policy, and noted that funds do not come out of the operating budget.

Following additional discussion, the Council approved the Finance Committee recommendation that the Association follow the same 5 percent total return policy and methodology, less allocated administrative fees, with the exception of three funds where the total is too small. Prize amounts for 1998 book awards should be calculated under this new formula. In addition, staff was asked to round prize amounts, thus eliminating, for example, \$823 awards.

*E. Report on selection of external auditor:* Mr. Miller reported that the Finance Committee had thought it would be a good practice to test the market periodically and ascertain what services were available. He noted that during the spring a set of procedures were developed to appoint an auditor on a routine five-year basis. The process would include the controller, executive director, and Finance Committee. Mr. Miller noted that Mr. Norell and Ms. Freitag had developed a Request for Proposals, and that six firms had responded. The field had been narrowed to four firms, each had been interviewed and references checked, and they had been recommended to the Finance Committee.

Mr. Miller reported that the committee had decided that it did not have sufficient time to assess whether the committee's standards had been met. He remarked that if a change were to be made for the 1997-98 audit, a decision would have to be made by the end of the current month. If the Finance Committee and staff could not reach a conclusion this quickly, then the current auditor would continue in place. Although the matter will not be referred back to the full Council, Mr. Miller noted that members would be kept informed about the decision on the upcoming audit.

**6. Implementation proposals from the subcommittee report (“Palmer Report” on changes in Council/AHA practices):** At its June 1997 meeting, Council discussed the AHA’s role as an association, and appointed a Council subcommittee to define how the AHA should be positioned in the future and how Council should determine program initiatives. Members had agreed that Council should develop a more comprehensive set of strategic objectives not only for the divisions but also for the Council to better respond to opportunities. A subcommittee of immediate past president Caroline Bynum, Mr. Katz, and Mr. Palmer, who served as chair, was asked to examine the constantly moving “wall” of priorities of the Association and to address the degree that the AHA should originate and/or facilitate projects and initiatives. The subcommittee was also asked to assess how the AHA should set priorities and how these priorities relate to the membership. Following consideration of the subcommittee’s recommendations, formal policies and procedures would be considered. Given the rotating nature of AHA elective offices, members thought that Council needed to provide continuity in setting Association priorities and maintaining initiatives.

Mr. Palmer presented the report of the subcommittee. He noted that the subcommittee shared the view that the AHA staff had been effective in introducing new members of Council to their various duties, and that it saw no need to alter the existing process, except to recommend that the orientation package be mailed well in advance of the first meeting. They suggested, in addition, that the president write a letter of welcome to new members.

Mr. Palmer noted that the subcommittee had spent a considerable amount of time examining the ways in which the AHA could improve its services to the profession it serves and to the general public. He noted that subcommittee members had recognized that the effectiveness of the AHA’s programs would be enhanced by the degree to which it attracted and maintained the active involvement of members from all types of institutions. Accordingly, one of the challenges is how to make the organization more inclusive as the representative of historians from all kinds of institutions and fields. Mr. Palmer stated that the subcommittee felt the AHA should initiate discussions with historians on the crucial question of the meanings of professionalism in the discipline. As part of this, the members suggested taking steps to enhance the attractiveness of the annual meeting, thereby improving attendance and participation. The subcommittee also recommended that greater care should be taken in the selection of members of the Program Committee, including revision of committee guidelines; that the Program Committee should work more closely with affiliated societies in planning sessions and ensuring that affiliate proposals reflect the intellectual tone and emphasis the AHA seeks to promote; and that procedures be modified to require distribution of papers before the session, to discourage reading of papers, to limit panelist time so that more time is devoted to audience discussion, and to solicit especially papers dealing with thematic/interpretive/methodological/comparative questions.

While the subcommittee noted that the AHA is associated with a range of advocacy groups and others, it expressed concern that, taken together, they seemed to lack intellectual focus or coherence. They urged Council to endorse only those projects that were consistent with the AHA’s mission and to discuss thoroughly new initiatives before undertaking. Additional recommendations regarding governance and outreach issues include revisiting the importance of the nature of the undergraduate major for the twenty-first century and becoming more sensitive to the nature of its image and how it relates to the various public it serves. In addition, Mr. Palmer stated that elected members should be more readily accessible to the membership and general public. He noted that an important part of this point focused on the changing nature of the presidency, and suggested that Council should rethink the duties of that office with a view to ensuring that the president is not overly consumed with administrative responsibilities at the expense of other deserving endeavors. Mr. Palmer reported that the subcommittee also recommended that Council explore the possibility of joint memberships with similar organizations and consider re-establishing the Speakers’ Bureau.

Adding to Mr. Palmer's remarks, subcommittee member Mr. Katz noted two additional points. First, he agreed that the AHA needed to find ways to address issues and that he worried as well that the AHA Council was too driven by agendas. Second, given the special concerns of the Research Division and some members of Council, he thought that issues around the Program Committee should be the focus of special attention during the Research Division report.

Mr. Miller began by thanking Mr. Palmer, Mr. Katz, and Ms. Bynum, and asking members what Council could do as an initial step. Mr. Grossberg stated that his initial reaction had been to the suggestion to send the president to visit campuses. He reminded members that he and the *Journal of American History* editor had done something similar, and had found the visits to be more useful than general surveys. Mr. Miller suggested that such visits would be more useful during the president-elect year since it was the most intensive learning period. Mr. Beveridge reminded members that the general public had little information about the AHA, and that the Association was most often perceived as a trade organization. He encouraged members to speak outside their natural constituency, although he noted there could be significant budget implications to this kind of outreach. Mr. Palmer noted that the subcommittee had recommended a part-time public relations person for these endeavors. Ms. Appleby stated that many departments and organizations would be willing to pay expenses and suggested inserting an announcement in the newsletter and limiting visits to no more than eight.

Mr. Darnton stated that he had been impressed by Mr. Palmer's written report and oral presentation. He remarked that it had struck him that one problem was that the Council got so caught up in particular issues that it did not have time to discuss history. He asked if Council should work harder to get to engage members on important issues in the profession and not what a member receives when s/he belongs to the AHA. Mr. Palmer said the subcommittee had not discussed this, but had instead recommended a part-time person to conceive the possibilities and support logistical aspects.

Mr. Miller asked members how Council could bring the initial phase of the subcommittee's work to a close and begin to assign tasks to various divisions and committees. Ms. Hata suggested that she could work with Ms. Tune to put together a handbook for new Council members. Members thanked Ms. Hata for her offer, and Mr. Miller suggested that a draft table of contents could be available for review at the January meeting.

Mr. Fink suggested that the AHA serve as catalysts for departments, developing an agenda to encourage them to engage in a series of discussions, and then pool the information to be shared by all. He noted that the AHA could serve as a catalyst to challenge departments to set aside time to discuss key issues. Ms. Phillips agreed, stating that the AHA's web site was an obvious place to begin some of the conversations. Mr. Greenberg raised two points. First, he noted that the subcommittee's point encouraging the AHA to serve the profession more effectively and the president to visit campuses worked well with Mr. Beveridge's advice that the AHA speak to the broader public. He noted the AHA faced a tougher challenge precisely because it was the professional organization for all historians. Second, Mr. Greenberg commended the subcommittee's report, but dissented on the point about the president's role in the Association. He stated that the president was, in fact, the chairman of the board; a board charged with extremely important fiduciary responsibilities that are not merely minutiae but really have to do with the health of the only learned society that represents the entire historical field in the United States. He also stated that it was an extremely important responsibility to be president of the AHA, both because there is an opportunity for intellectual leadership and because there is another kind of leadership that is just as important, administrative or "bureaucratic" leadership. He noted that the chairman of the board function was an extremely important one now, especially since the environment in which nonprofit associations function has changed radically and their finances have changed radically, and that required a different kind of responsibility. Mr. Palmer said he thought it was a question of balance, that there needed to be a definition of boundaries, to free the president to do other things, such as visiting campuses. Ms. Young remarked that the

conflicts in the AHA were reflected in her department, and that these issues should be discussed. Summing up, Mr. Miller stated that the subcommittee had brought back a sufficiently concrete and thought-provoking report to carry Council forward. Members expressed appreciation to Mr. Palmer and the subcommittee.

**7. Annual meeting site:** Ms. Tune delivered a report on the site selection processes for future annual meetings: A. *Update on 2002:* Ms. Tune began with an update on the 2002 meeting. She reported that ten Council members had responded to the mid-April memorandum regarding the site for the January 3-6, 2002 Annual Meeting. Members who had responded unanimously agreed that Ms. Tune could proceed with negotiations and sign contracts with San Francisco properties. Ms. Tune reported that within the past two weeks, negotiations had been concluded with the San Francisco Hilton (1,600 rooms) to serve as headquarters hotel, with the Renaissance Parc 55 (800 rooms) to serve as co-headquarters, and with the Hotel Nikko (200 rooms) to provide overflow accommodations. She reported the terms and concessions of the contracts, which included guaranteed rates of \$99 single and double at the Hilton and Parc 55 and \$109 rates at the Nikko, with rates applicable 3 days before/after meeting; earned complimentary rooms based upon the total number of rooms sold plus additional suites “over and above” earned rooms; upgrades for Council members; twenty-five rooms at 50 percent off the convention rates for staff, honorees, and others on the AHA’s housing list; complimentary facilities rental for the exhibit hall, Job Register, and meeting space; hotel-hosted president’s and executive director’s receptions, and other concessions such as gratis telephone installation/set rental and rekeying of offices and reduction in charges for microphones.

B. *Sites for 2003:* At the January 11, 1998 meeting, Council had asked staff to explore the following cities for availability, to collect information as required by site selection procedures, and to report at the spring Council meeting: Atlanta, Chicago, Cleveland, Dallas, Houston, Indianapolis, Minneapolis, and San Antonio. Members were provided with information on each site as required by site selection procedures.

Before developing a “short list” of cities to begin contract negotiations, Council members addressed two policy issues as they relate to the AHA’s Meeting Policy and Site Selection Procedures, sodomy laws and right-to-work laws. Since many of the sites under consideration were affected by one or the other, or both, of these kinds of provisions, Council discussed the extent to which these points should remain a part of the review process. Thereafter, cities would be reviewed within the policy decisions.

Ms. Tune noted that up to this point, and following the policy guidelines and procedures approved by Council in January 1994, states actively enforcing laws on these two issues had been ruled out as annual meeting sites. With regard to consideration of sodomy laws, she noted that the process had been rather complicated, and rested as much on active enforcement in the city as the presence of specific laws on the city or state books. Ms. Tune provided members with a written, state-by-state evaluation of relevant legislation and court cases, and noted that the anti-gay tilt in most sodomy legislation was clearly covered in the policy statement. With regard to consideration of right-to-work provisions, she also provided a state-by-state report and noted that these laws were also covered by the Council-devised guidelines.

*Sodomy laws:* Ms. Tune reminded members that the Committee on Lesbian and Gay History had decided not to make an issue of the 1996 Atlanta meeting site since the AHA had just paid a \$100,000+ premium to withdraw from 1995 Cincinnati contracts after that city approved legislation similar to that in force in Georgia. Mr. Katz agreed that returning to Atlanta would send an unfavorable message to the membership, and Ms. Young and Ms. Appleby concurred that the AHA should not go to states that have these laws on the books. Upon motion by Mr. Katz and second by Ms. Young, Council unanimously agreed that the AHA should not schedule its annual meeting in cities or states that enforce or have recently adopted sodomy laws. In discussing the motion, Ms. Appleby questioned implications and asked what would happen if a

state changed its laws after the AHA signed contracts. Ms. Freitag reported that the current contract addendum allows the AHA to withdraw without penalty up to eleven months before the meeting and thereafter with a 40-percent penalty. Ms. Phillips asked if this issue should be put to a vote of the membership since the decision about Cincinnati might continue to serve as a flash point for discontent. Mr. Greenberg argued that Council did not need to consult with the membership since Council members were the elected representatives and would abrogate their responsibility if they didn't act.

*Right to work laws:* Ms. Tune reported that federal law permits states to adopt right-to-work laws, and noted that twenty-one states had passed laws affirming an employee's "right to work" regardless of union membership. Ms. Freitag reported that the injunction here had been incorporated into the policy in 1994 on the recommendation of the then president. Mr. Fink asked if other issues had been addressed, such as labor stoppages. Ms. Tune replied that this had not been a problem in the past, but that the contract addendum asks hotels to keep the AHA informed so it can keep its members informed as they make decisions about hotel choice. Mr. Fink remarked that he felt quite strongly about labor issues and that it struck him that ongoing worker grievances was a crucial issue, but that a prohibition of right-to-work states would seem to exclude the South. Following additional discussion, and noting that the AHA did not have a policy prohibiting it from contracting in states with right-to-work laws, members agreed to make no change in that policy but did ask staff to continue collecting information to report to members about labor disputes in hotels.

Council discussed its selection of a "short list" of cities to continue negotiations for the 2003 meeting. In light of policy direction just adopted, Atlanta was excluded from the list. Dallas did not have dates available. Ms. Tune also noted that two additional cities--Cleveland and Houston--did not have sufficient meeting facilities and/or hotel rooms within walking distance of the convention center. Members narrowed discussion to Chicago, San Antonio, and Minneapolis. After discussing potential problems in recruiting sufficient number of Local Arrangements Committee members and hourly workers in San Antonio, and upon motion by Ms. Appleby and second by Ms. Young, members unanimously agreed that Ms. Tune should continue negotiations with Chicago and Minneapolis.

Members agreed that since the vetting process was now complete, staff could continue under normal internal decision-making procedures to bring negotiations for the 2003 meeting to conclusion by the end of the summer.

*C. Future years -- 2005 and out:* Ms. Tune reported she has received several inquiries from convention bureaus regarding "outyear" rotation and asked Council to discuss briefly the rotational pattern after 2004. However, given time limitations, discussion was postponed until the January meetings.

**8. Discussion about development with Development Advisory Committee:** Evan Stewart, executive vice president/general counsel of Nikko Securities Co., International Inc. and chair of the Development Advisory Committee (DAC), joined the meeting by telephone to discuss DAC activities. Linn Shapiro, manager, new project development, also joined the meeting. *A. Progress report:* Ms. Shapiro provided members with a written update on development activities. At the January 1998 meeting, Council had agreed to "acquiesce" to the continuation of fund-raising efforts, which included a plan to hold five receptions during the coming year, and postpone creation of a "Friends of the AHA" group. Ms. Shapiro's report noted that the two receptions held thus far had met with limited success. The first, in Cambridge, was attended by too few people to make it a financial success, and the second, scheduled for Los Angeles, was canceled by host John Cooke. While the AHA had yet to offer an evening that combined all the elements of a model as originally conceived by the DAC, receptions planned for Washington, D.C. and New York City during the fall more closely approximated the model. Eleven of seventeen DAC members have made the initial payment of \$1,000 per year for three



years, for a total of \$10,500. Although an important organizational step was taken with the election of Mr. Stewart as chair, the DAC had not yet functioned as a group with a sense of purpose and a set of activities to carry out that purpose. To frame discussion for her oral report, Ms. Shapiro posed a set of decisions to be made: Evaluate Washington and New York receptions and reconsider approach to reception strategy at January 1999 Council meeting? Begin a limited effort to find donors among members? Begin a limited effort to find major donors? Adopt a development plan?

Ms. Shapiro stated that staff and the DAC had been learning how to organize the receptions. She noted that people would not necessarily attend just because an event was hosted by the AHA, even when they held the AHA in some esteem. Critical to the success of the receptions was to prove that the Association has financial needs and to describe where funds would be spent. Ms. Shapiro stated that the Washington reception, scheduled for early October, would be a “test” of sorts: if the AHA does everything right, can the AHA do it right. Mr. Stewart concurred, noting that they had also learned that an important component had been missing: a base of supporters for the group had not yet been developed. He stated that moving forward without identifying the people to be brought in under the umbrella left the Association open to failure. He reminded members that he had stated on more than one occasion that the Council itself had a wealth of potential supporters and lovers of history in their former students. He argued that DAC needed from the twelve leading historians sitting around the table lists of the ten or fifteen loyal or devoted former students to ask them to work with the DAC or with the AHA. Ms. Appleby, in noting Mr. Stewart’s model with his former professor Walt LaFeber was an unusual one, stated that most members did not have ten or fifteen wealthy former students. Other members agreed, noting that response from this avenue had not been successful. Mr. Stewart suggested there might be other ways to develop the base of support. Ms. Hata noted that she had served previously on the Roelker Mentorship Committee and that letters of support for the faculty members oftentimes were on prestigious letterhead, such as lawyers and bankers. She queried if there was some way the AHA could tap into this kind of support from individuals who are still committed to their former instructors and to history and have written for this award and others. Upon query, Mr. Beveridge stated he did not see any legal problems using contact information from letters.

Mr. Beveridge noted that he agreed with Mr. Stewart that the AHA needed to identify its group of supporters. He reported that the Washington reception would be planned by recruiting a host committee and then relying on the committee to call upon personal relationships for the invitation list. He noted that this was not as effective as calling upon someone who was dedicated to the AHA itself. Mr. Stewart agreed, stating that he had originally thought there would be a wealth of names, for example, from former students of C. Vann Woodward or former students at Yale University, who could be called upon. He agreed that calling on personal relationships would only take DAC so far, and that the AHA must identify and then call upon a base of supporters. Mr. Miller thanked Mr. Beveridge and Mr. Stewart for making this point, and agreed on its importance.

Ms. Shapiro remarked that if the AHA was to move forward with fund-raising efforts, that it needed a plan of action. If hosting a series of receptions would not be the strategic way the AHA would continue development, then how else would the AHA proceed and how could the AHA encourage DAC members to become more involved? Ms. Shapiro noted that most of the DAC members, with the exception of Mr. Beveridge and Mr. Stewart, had not yet learned very much about the AHA. She also noted that Mr. Beveridge and Mr. Stewart had somewhat different views on how development plans should continue, and asked Council to consider how these differences should be resolved. She pointed out that it was not the DAC’s responsibility to make this reconciliation, rather it was the Council’s. For these and other reasons, she urged Council members to consider a development plan since it would impact all other issues.

Mr. Stewart concurred, stating that the AHA did not yet have a good grasp on what it wanted the DAC to do. If the AHA wanted the group solely to raise money, it should make that decision. He argued that Council must tell the group what it should do and how ambitious the goals. He noted that Mr. LaFeber had described to him other kinds of development activities, including reaching out to people who supported history, noting the request had come at a time of increasing misperceptions about the historical profession such as the Enola Gay controversy at the Smithsonian Institution. Ms. Freitag agreed that this had indeed been part of the frame for setting up the DAC and was the view of the Council at the time, led by then-president John Coatsworth. She noted that the invitation to the people who came to the first DAC meeting quite explicitly stated that the AHA sought their help in reaching the public on the importance of history and on controversial issues.

B. *Proposal to DAC for funding project and general discussion about future activities:* In presenting the draft proposal on fund-raising focuses for DAC, Ms. Freitag stated that she and Ms. Shapiro had worked with Mr. Beveridge and Mr. Stewart and had labored to capture what each had said. However, she worried that the more she worked on the plan, the more complicated, longer, and elaborate it had become. She decided that the best way to continue was to present it to Council, not as something that needed to be polished rather as something with a variety of pieces which Council must resolve and then decide if the pieces make sense on their own. If members agree that they do, then staff and Council could find ways to connect them in a coherent plan that served the institutional interests of the AHA as well as the specific, expressed interests of members of the DAC.

Mr. Stewart stated that he thought the draft was terrific and had a good phase-in concept. He remarked that as the AHA expanded the DAC concept and drew more people under its umbrella, media attention would follow providing additional contacts for the AHA. He stated that his experience on the DAC had taught him that the AHA could not raise a ground swell of affection from ground zero. The AHA would need to demonstrate that it is a presence on the internet, television, and other venues. He stated that the more the AHA's name is put before a larger audience, the more access it would have and the better opportunity to reach those most receptive.

Noting that he was speaking from a local fund-raising point of view, Mr. Beveridge stated that he did not think the AHA should go beyond Phase I under any circumstance. He remarked that everyone he had discussed this with had wanted to see something tangible and local with which they could interact, such as a local teacher or local student. He stated that he was very skeptical about raising money for technology and that a project for K-12 teachers made more sense to him. Mr. Stewart concurred, stating that he did not disagree with Mr. Beveridge, and that something tangible and local would be a good start. Following the suggestions in the plan, Mr. Fink noted that some of the Teaching Division projects would fit quite well to this call for more tangible examples. He noted that the division had been discussing the creation of AHA outreach centers or partnerships to connect university departments with K-12 teachers on the model of thematic, document-based seminars that would run throughout the academic year.

Ms. Shapiro remarked that the proposal had seemed to become more and more vague. She noted that the main problem she saw at this point was that everyone had more ideas on how to spend money than to raise it. In addition, she thought there was not enough specifics describing how the funds would be spent after they were raised nor enough description on what the DAC would do. Mr. Katz agreed, and stated that he thought the AHA's strategy would not work unless there was a full-time development person. He cited as example a similar program at the American Council of Learned Societies (ACLS) during his tenure as president. He noted that he had raised \$6 million for a program that he thought had been a success but that he couldn't continue raising money and the program was now ending because the ACLS was no longer interested in doing it. Observing that one of the projects in the proposal earmarked \$10,000 of the Disney gift to begin building groundwork, Mr. Katz stated that this amount was not sufficient

to begin the project and was the wrong approach if the AHA was looking for a quick way to begin.

Mr. Darnton commented that he agreed with Mr. Katz, and noted that what had particular resonance with him was a point in Mr. Beveridge's letter that stated it was incumbent upon the Council to make up its own mind on what it wanted DAC to support and then to sell that decision to the DAC. He stated that he could imagine a much more concrete "wish list" that might inspire a campaign to take to corporations which might adopt one. He stated that the AHA could enlist Vartan Gregorian, president of the Carnegie Corporation and former president of Brown University, as a collaborator, noting that he was very keen on the AHA and very good at raising money, but was also someone who dealt with the concrete. Mr. Darnton suggested a more precise, very clipped and clear wish list that the DAC could use in its fund-raising efforts. Upon query by Ms. Freitag about how his suggestion would connect with DAC, Mr. Darnton responded that he thought DAC was asking the Council to come up with such a wish list. Mr. Greenberg stated that the point was that the AHA needed to have concrete proposals for specific projects for which people or corporations would give money and that the AHA had not yet attained this goal.

In closing out the discussion, Mr. Miller thanked Mr. Stewart and Mr. Beveridge for taking part in a useful session that began to identify some of the challenges for Council and the DAC. Mr. Beveridge stated that he would second an earlier statement of Mr. Katz that the AHA could not effectively raise money with a part-time development person. Mr. Stewart also offered to speak with Council members individually.

**9. Publication issues:** *A. President-elect Darnton's initiative on electronic monograph prize:* During the spring, Mr. Darnton had forwarded for discussion at division and committee meetings a proposal to create an electronic book prize to honor the best unpublished monographs. He recommended that a prize focus on four or five fields in which it is difficult for authors to locate a traditional print publisher, e.g. colonial Latin America, medieval Europe, East and South Asia, pre-twentieth century diplomatic, and labor history. The prize would rotate each year among these fields. He stated that the goal was to establish the legitimacy of electronic publication by creating a prestigious honor for manuscripts that have not received a contract for traditional publication. Members were provided with excerpts from the minutes of the Professional, Research, and Teaching Divisions; the Committees on Minority and Women Historians; and the Task Force on the Role of Graduate Students in the AHA.

The Professional Division had sought additional information since it was not clear if the prize was intended for unpublished dissertations or for electronically published books. Division members also asked for clarification if the primary goal was to help the winners or to legitimate electronic publication. The various committees and divisions supported the principle behind the proposal, that scholarship in small-audience fields continue to be disseminated by academic presses in electronic media if print media are not economically feasible, but had questions or suggestions for Mr. Darnton to include in a revised proposal.

Rather than rewrite the proposal at this point, Mr. Darnton reported that he had instead prepared a written response to the questions and criticisms from the AHA divisions and committees. In answering the query if the main purpose of the proposal was to promote electronic publishing or to help young scholars at the beginning of their career, he noted that the problems were interlinked and could not be reduced to an either/or proposition. He also argued that even if a dissertation wins a prize, it did not necessarily follow that a press would therefore find it attractive and publish it in conventional form. He cited as an example a recent book on nineteenth-century Brazil that had won two prizes but failed to sell 500 copies. Describing the prize as one that will help authors turn dissertations into books, Mr. Darnton disagreed that the new prize would lead to a two-tier system of conventional books and of electronic publications. Noting that this danger already existed and would no doubt grow as more dissertations become available on the internet, Mr. Darnton argued that the proposal should reduce the danger by

opening up a new way of transforming dissertations into books. He stated that if the prize had its intended effect, it should promote electronic publishing in general.

In reviewing the answers posed by the committees and divisions, Mr. Darnton stated that he had purposely drafted a sketchy proposal originally in order to gauge reaction and to elicit suggestions for improvement. In addition to consulting with AHA divisions and committees, the proposal was also reviewed by a number of outside groups. Mr. Darnton noted he had received several useful suggestions, all of which had been incorporated into the answers raised by the questions in the memo. Rather than go over these individually with the Council, Mr. Darnton suggested that he could respond to Council members' questions. He also proposed that rather than rewriting the proposal in another form, he would recommend that Council offer suggestions and then authorize the president to appoint a committee of people involved in libraries and universities to develop a final proposal to circulate in advance of the January meeting. If Council approved, the prize could be announced in early 1999 and the first prize could be awarded in January 2000.

Mr. Katz remarked that Mr. Darnton had provided additional information that made the proposal more compelling. While he believed some refinement was still needed, he stated that he was excited about its prospects and that it could make a difference to the profession. Mr. Miller said that he had the same reaction, and was encouraged that the AHA could play a role in exploiting newer technology and in setting standards for its review. Mr. Darnton remarked that the prize itself was actually for the transformation of a dissertation into a book. He agreed that doing so would cost money, noting there would always be a vast difference in the cost of a dissertation and the cost of a book. He argued that the AHA could do take the next step beyond a regular print publication. The AHA could create an electronic book that could be enormously useful in many ways to the profession. He agreed that the question of financing was a serious one, but that there was a definite possibility of developing a consortium that wouldn't bankrupt the Association. Although he had originally thought the electronic publications should be provided free of charge, he now thought there should be fees. He noted, however, that this was the kind of issue the committee should address.

Ms. Phillips stated that she also agreed with the potential for the prize and thought it was a wonderful idea in several different ways. However, she saw a problem in that the proposal could be viewed in several different ways, and some seemed mutually exclusive. She stated that she was particularly interested in the notion of legitimizing the whole idea of an electronic book for historians coming up for tenure, which was different from the goal of providing a new way to publish. She cited as an example a historian working in quantitative research. While it might be impossible for the historian to publish his work in traditional form since it could fill several volumes, the product of this research could be made available electronically. Legitimizing what is already available particularly appealed to her, and she remarked that the committee might want to discuss first whether the prize should apply only to dissertations, or to previously published electronic books, or to any text of a first book that any author submits for publication.

Mr. Grossberg noted that his contribution had been on this point about legitimization, and that it seemed that part of the goal was not just to pick a particular work of scholarship but also to legitimate the idea that scholarship can be disseminated in a variety of ways. This would provide a role for journals, with the *AHR* not only subjecting these kinds of books to normal review standards, but also initiating discussions with other journals about this issue. This reinforced his original thought that publications must be books since part of the challenge is dissemination: how would the *AHR* get a copy of the work to review? Particularly for this reason, Mr. Grossberg felt it was critical to work with journals. Mr. Greenberg agreed, and remarked that the best dissertation identified by the selection committee might not necessarily become the best electronic book. He pointed out that what was under discussion was a new mode, and that it is extremely important for the AHA to take leadership. Mr. Katz, while noting there would not be a huge number of entries for the committee to review initially, also pointed out that those willing to

develop such a process would be taking a big gamble. He remarked that it should be relatively easy to raise money to support the prize and ultimately, funds would be needed for a fellowship. Finally, Mr. Katz noted that he did not think it was so obvious which fields are now difficult to publish. He suggested asking the American Association of University Presses (AAUP) to survey fields, since it hasn't been done in ten or twelve years. Ms. Freitag reported that she had recently spoken with the director of the AAUP, and that he had expressed interest in cosponsoring the award and so could probably be persuaded to poll its members.

Mr. Darnton thanked Council members for their excellent suggestions, and noted that part of the charge for the committee would be to define the modalities for the competition. He stated that he had come to realize that to have a prize competition such as what was developing would be extremely difficult to administer and that he had changed his mind about the nominations process. Individual departments might instead be asked to nominate one thesis or one thesis per field, and the selection committee could then work on ways to adapt the dissertations to this new format. Again, he suggested that this and other issues raised by Council members were areas for discussion by the committee. Ms. Young encouraged Mr. Darnton to define what the prize would encourage. Mr. Fink also recognized the long-term potential of the new format to take the pressure off dissertations and young scholars, but expressed worry about development of a two-tier valuation. Rather than put the burden of the new technology and the uncertainty of it on young scholars, he asked if it wouldn't make more sense to place on more established scholars. This would take the burden from someone trying to enter the profession and faced with a difficult choice: do I take my dissertation and transform it into something which is quite different from what my department requires, or do I do what I can to try get it published in book form? Mr. Darnton replied that this was something the committee would need to review, but that what he had designed was not to help established scholars publish, but to redefine and legitimate this new format. He remarked that he saw no problem with simultaneous electronic and print publication.

Following additional discussion and upon motion by Ms. Hata and second by Mr. Katz, Council unanimously approved appointment of an ad hoc committee to consider the issues discussed by Council and to report with a concrete proposal by the January meeting. Mr. Miller will appoint the members, and probably appoint Mr. Darnton as chair.

*B. Progress report from Ad Hoc Publications Advisory Committee (PAC):* On behalf of the committee on which he serves, Mr. Katz provided members with a brief oral report to supplement the summary notes of the PAC's April conference call. The PAC approved the following principles to guide decisions relating to AHA revenues from publications and forwarded them for Council consideration: (1) The mission of the AHA's publication program is to serve its members and the field at large. (2) Additional investment to increase the return on the publications program is desirable. (3) Over the long-run, the AHA's publishing program should be self-sufficient overall, which assumes that one part of the program may subsidize another. (4) However, in the short-run, it is also clear that additional resources will be needed and that the AHA should seek those resources.

To implement these principles, the PAC recommended: (1) The introduction of modest-scaled and imaginative experiments in marketing AHA pamphlets, targeted at both members and nonmembers. (2) An experiment should be introduced on the membership renewal form that allows members to pay ahead for publications to be received. This is the Member Services Program (MSP), seen as the equivalent to the Institutional Services Program (ISP). Ms. Freitag reported that both of these proposals had been incorporated into the budget approved earlier by Council. [See agenda item 5.B.(3).] (3) AHA staff should continue to explore experiments that offer advertisers options for placing advertisements with the AHA in print and through the web site(s). (4) As part of their responsibility when advancing proposals for publishing projects, the divisions and committees should include information on the likely size of audience (respectively for print and electronic dissemination) and whether a publication should have different content

for print and electronic formats, and how this might affect the audience/market size and appeal of the proposed publication.

The PAC approved the following principles to guide decisions relating to technological issues, and forwarded to Council: (1) Planning and implementation rest on the assumption that most publications will be done both in print and electronic format. (2) Planning and implementation also rest on the assumption that dissemination of e-pamphlets (like print pamphlets) will be for free and mounted in the free space of the AHA's web site. (3) Implementation will be shaped especially by the fact that the staff must work at a pace justified by available research/development funds, members' interests and needs, and the potential of particular work assignments to add value to electronic formats.

*C. Progress report on Creating Consensus on Digital Standards and Endangered Monograph project(s):* Ms. Freitag remarked that both projects have received strong support from the Council previously. Although there had not been much activity since last fall, both projects were suddenly poised for movement. The Creating Consensus project was initially sent to the Mellon Foundation at the same time as the journal editors' conference proposal. She reported on a series of recent conversations with the ACLS and National Academy of Sciences (NAS). A proposal had been developed and was now in final form which Ms. Freitag would forward to Council members. The follow-up activity has been a joint initiative with ACLS and NAS with the support of NINCH. Ms. Freitag noted that the AHA has been the only scholarly society invited to participate in discussions up to this point. She reported that the project will begin with a conversation about what matters to the discipline, and would then pose a set of questions about what needs to be protected and perpetuated. The project is now being treated as a model for five "building block" projects that will be adopted by the ACLS/NAS, which should also improve chances for funding during the next several months.

Following the conference on the endangered monographs in September 1997, there was a session for interested participants in the AHA/ARL monograph project. Ms. Freitag reported that additional groups had participated, including OAH, area studies organizations, six major presses, and seven or eight major libraries. The group will be working with individual libraries but also with the Association of Research Libraries, the Research Libraries Group, and a new group called Digital Libraries Federation composed of the major libraries. It is the only project focused on a single discipline, and the libraries in particular are very interested.

**10. Advocacy Issues:** *A. "In Washington" activities:* Following up on an invitation to William Ferris, chairman of the National Endowment for the Humanities (NEH), Ms. Freitag reminded members that Mr. Ferris had been unable to meet with Council at the spring meeting, and asked if Council would like her to contact him about the Thursday, January 7, Council session. Members agreed that Ms. Freitag should contact Mr. Ferris about joining members for a luncheon meeting. *1. Intellectual property: legislative update from ARL for NHA:* Members were provided with a copy of the Association of Research Libraries briefing on 1998 copyright legislation prepared for the annual meeting of the National Humanities Alliance, April 30, 1998.

*2. NEH long-term strategy for raising allocation:* Ms. Freitag reported that one of the strategies adopted by the NHA board was that member organizations contribute to an NHA-organized, long term, grass-roots efforts to build up local demand for increasing the NEH budget. With the timing of the initiative, it would not make any difference for the current fiscal year, but if approved, the organizations in NHA would have almost a year's lead time to effect change for the following year. Ms. Freitag stated that if work was apportioned over a year, it could be incorporated into the staff's workload with minimal additional effort. She stated that the AHA had never tried this kind of effort. Upon query by Mr. Greenberg, Ms. Freitag further described the work required: the staff would identify key members of the Association for the NHA in a limited number of districts. Working with NHA and other board member societies, staff would keep these local supporters informed, and they would stay in touch with the

Congressperson's district office. Ms. Appleby remarked that she had written a column about this which had elicited some response and offered to forward the information to headquarters. Mr. Darnton agreed that it was a good suggestion, but expressed concern about the amount of staff time required. Ms. Freitag expressed optimism that work would be dispersed over the course of the year, but that she would consult with Council if it required more time than currently anticipated. Upon motion by Mr. Katz and second by Ms. Appleby, Council unanimously authorized the AHA staff to build up the kind of network Ms. Freitag described but asked that if it a greater staff/time commitment was required than had been discussed, that staff consult with Council about continuation.

3. *Reinstatement of funding support for data collection:* Severe cuts in the National Endowment for the Humanities (NEH) budget in recent years has called into question funding for two studies which the Endowment has supported since the 1970s: the annual Survey of Earned Doctorates (providing data on students completing requirements for doctoral degrees, by field, and, in many cases, subfields) and the biennial Survey of Doctorate Recipients (a longitudinal survey of the nation's doctoral publication). The biennial Survey of Doctorate Recipients is the only study that can provide data, by field, on employment status of humanities doctorates, as well as such other issues as faculty rank, or salary. Due to the cutback in NEH funds, the 1995 survey is the last for which the profession has data on humanities doctorates. The membership of the National Humanities Alliance was urged to go on record in favor of restoration of these funds. Ms. Freitag reported that it was crucial that the database be reinstated within the next year. Mr. Townsend concurred, noting that the survey provides vitally important information on the profession dating back to 1979. Ms. Freitag asked Council for authorization to send letters of support to NEH. Upon motion by Mr. Katz and second by Mr. Fink, members unanimously approved drafting a letter for Mr. Miller's signature. The letter should be copied to OAH, NHA, and other organizations.

B. *National Coordinating Committee for the Promotion of History (NCC) report:* Page Putnam Miller, director of NCC, joined the meeting to brief Council members on several issues. She reported that while the NEH's existence no longer seems to be threatened, the appropriations process for the 1998-99 fiscal year would probably be difficult and prolonged. Congress is behind schedule on reaching a budget resolution, which is necessary before the thirteen appropriations subcommittees receive their allocations which will then be divided among the federal programs within their jurisdiction. Ms. Miller reported that the NEH budget allocation was very tight but that some slight increase seemed possible. Mr. Katz also added that the NEH chairman's emphasis on regional centers had shaped his treatment of other projects and noted that some projects had been turned down in spite of recommendations from the NEH Council.

Ms. Miller stated that the National Archives continued to be a troubled agency, with ongoing problems in several areas. She voiced concerns about preservation of electronic records, reporting that many records are being lost. She noted that federal agencies were also quite concerned since they do not yet have the capacity to deal with a number of challenges including staffing and software. Ms. Miller reported that the Department of Defense seemed to be most prepared and capable of the agencies in solving problems, and has been developing criteria for software. She also reported that the National Historical Publications and Records Commission (NHPRC) was still searching for its next Director and that the process seemed to be stalemated.

Another opening is at the American Folklife Center of the Library of Congress. The Center is slightly more than twenty years old, and a bill was recently introduced in the Senate to authorize it permanently. The legislation calls for operation and direction under an independent Board of Trustees. Parallel legislation has not been introduced in the House. Ms. Miller also updated members on the protracted court battle surrounding the Nixon White House tapes. Since winning a 1992 appeals court decision giving Nixon the right to be compensated for the fair value of the collection, the estate has been trying to reach an out-of-court settlement with the Archives. She also reported that George Lardner of the *Washington Post* had been of major help publicizing

the historians' position. Expert witnesses in the case aren't being asked to put a dollar amount on the records, but to indicate their value for research purposes. While a settlement is still possible, prospects are dim and issues will probably be played out in court.

Reporting on declassification matters, Ms. Miller stated that the Senate Governmental Affairs Committee had held hearings this spring on the Government Secrecy Act, which would provide a statutory basis for national security information policy in place of the current system which is established by the President via executive order. Government witnesses have raised concerns about some of the central issues of the bill, particularly a "front end" balancing test which would allow judicial review of agency balancing decisions under the Freedom of Information Act. Ms. Miller reported on maneuvering on this issue, and noted there had been several setbacks. She stated that neither the CIA nor the Energy Department had file series policy records at the Archives, and that no CIA files were at the Archives. While both agencies tell researchers they have deposited the files, what they have actually done is forward selected documents.

Ms. Miller noted that both the House and the Senate appear to have placed their digital copyright legislation on a "fast track." On April 1, the House Judiciary Committee passed the World Intellectual Property Organization's (WIPO) treaty implementation legislation. Amendments recommended by Rep. Rich Boucher, who had introduced a copyright bill advocated by the library and scholarly communities, were strongly rejected. On April 30, the Senate Judiciary Committee marked-up another bill not yet introduced in the Senate. The central portion of this Digital Millennium Copyright Act of 1998 provides for the implementation of the WIPO treaties. She noted that the issue is being driven by the marketplace, and that it seemed to be winning the battle. Ms. Miller stated that she thought the whole area of digital copyright practice would move ahead of legislation. For example, the recent issue of *Academe* raised the issue of distance learning. In the area of fair use, Ms. Miller reported on increased talk about the use of licensing. Mr. Katz concurred, noting that he was afraid that a rich/poor dilemma would develop, dividing the AHA's membership and creating a problem for future Councils. Mr. Greenberg stated that one hope for the internet was that it would erase these "class" lines, though they seem to be reinforcing them.

In other matters, Ms. Miller provided Council with an update on court cases: *Public Citizen v. John Carlin* (case challenging policies that allow destruction of electronic records, currently under appeal), *Tax Analysts, the AHA et al v. IRS and the National Archives* (IRS records management case, court has just decreed case is not "ripe"); *Seiko Green v. National Archives* (Archives appraisal of Okinawa films, plaintiff won and Archives required to keep records), and *Bruce Craig v. United States* (unsealing Grand Jury records, amici brief filed). Ms. Miller also noted that the National Archives had made public a copy of its report on the inquiry into the destruction of Naval Research Laboratory records. The report noted that the Navy staff and the Archives staff had interpreted the appraisal schedules differently and that archival records of value had been destroyed. It also made a number of recommendations to prevent future occurrences. She also noted that the failure of the CIA to declassify key documents has been holding up publication of a number of volumes in the State Department's Foreign Relations of the U.S. series. In March, the House passed a bill to extend the length of copyright protection by twenty years for both new and currently published and copyrighted works. Within a week, the five major library organizations wrote to all members of the House opposing the legislation. Ms. Miller reported there have been no indications that the legislation is moving forward.

C. *National History Education Network (NHEN) report*: Members were provided with information from Loretta Lobes, executive director of NHEN, including the most recent copy of the NHEN newsletter, an article by Ms. Lobes on state standards appearing in the *History Teacher*, and description of NHEN's grant proposal to NEH on "Exploration in Technology and Society: The History of Technology."



**11. Standing Reports:** Council moved to the reports of the three vice presidents. A. *Report of the Professional Division:* Ms. Phillips reported on the division's March 7 teleconference and brought three items for action: (1) *Guidelines for the Employment of Part-time and Temporary Faculty in History:* Ms. Phillips noted that the guidelines were adapted from the September 1997 part-time/adjunct conference. She reported that the division tried to define the guidelines in terms of the best professional conditions for the teaching of history, and not in labor or advocacy terms. Mr. Katz applauded the division for developing such an admirable statement, and posed two questions: how can the AHA bring the guidelines to the attention of chairs, institutions, the people most affected by the issue, and what would be the division's position if the AHA received complaints. He also noted that he feared it would be viewed as a labor/advocacy statement. Ms. Phillips stated that for the short-term the guidelines would be disseminated through the newsletter, chairs listserv, and the AHA web site. She reported that division member Gail Savage would write a separate article for the newsletter. If complaints are lodged with the AHA, they would be resolved under the *Statement on Standards* since this statement was not a part of that document. Ms. Phillips also noted that the division knew that department chairs were looking for something to take to their deans, and thus viewed the statement as professional advocacy rather than labor advocacy. Ms. Young agreed, and pointed out language in the preamble stating that the guidelines are to help departments balance the issues involved. Following additional discussion, members voted unanimously to accept the division's recommendation to approve the guidelines. (See Attachment 1 for a copy of the guidelines.)

(2) *Revised EIB policy statement wording:* Ms. Phillips reported that the division had edited the guidelines for acceptance of advertisements for *Perspectives* but had not adjusted the content. Members voted unanimously to accept the division's recommendation to approve the edited policy statement. (See Attachment 2 for a copy of the "AHA Policy on Employment Advertising.")

(3) *Addition to "Directory of History Departments" survey:* Ms. Phillips reported that members had discussed adding some type of accountability measure to the guidelines, and added a point encouraging departments to keep careful statistics of the percentage of courses taught by non-full-time hires and to make the information available. To ensure that information is made available to the profession, the division also recommended that departments be asked to provide this information in the annual Department Survey. Following discussion, members voted unanimously to accept the division's recommendation that questions should be included in the survey asking departments about part-time/adjunct hires.

B. *Report of the Research Division:* Mr. Katz reported on the division's March 21-22 meeting and brought the following items for action: (1) *Honorary Foreign Member for 1999:* Council unanimously approved the division's election of Hans-Ulrich Wehler of Germany as the 1999 honorary foreign member. Staff will inform the 2000 Program Committee about Dr. Wehler's selection in the event it can include him on the 2000 program.

(2) *Proposal for a committee to craft a member survey re annual meeting:* Following up on a Council initiative, the Research Division had discussed surveying the membership about the annual meeting and other member services. The division recommended formation of a survey planning group with representatives from each division, and expressed hope that a survey could address a range of issues beyond the annual meeting. In presenting the division's proposal, Mr. Katz reported that division members had felt strongly that there was a need for a survey. Given the time constraints of the Council meeting, Mr. Katz proposed that Council approve the notion of a survey and ask the expanded Executive Committee to discuss the parameters and nature of the survey. In response to a question from Mr. Fink, Mr. Katz stated that the survey should deal with a whole range of issues, not just the annual meeting. Mr. Fink responded that there might be other ways to address the issue, and that Council hadn't really discussed the nature of its response. While noting he was not against a survey, he suggested as an alternate that departments might be asked to raise the issue at department meetings. Mr. Miller

remarked that he did not view a survey as a substitute for any other measure Council might decide to take. Ms. Freitag noted that two other groups should be included in the effort: the membership subcommittee of the Finance Committee, which will be examining similar issues, and the Committee on Minority Historians, which has been considering its own survey but has held back to see if its questions could fit into a broader survey instrument.

Following additional discussion, and upon recommendation of Mr. Katz, Council members unanimously authorized the expanded Executive Committee to develop a proposal that would then be sent to divisions and committees for review.

(3) *Budget for AHR Subcommittee*: The division submitted a budget to follow up its Council-approved request to examine the implications of electronic dissemination of the journal. The budget of \$2,800 in direct costs would cover one face-to-face meeting of the subcommittee in Chicago and two follow-up conference call meetings. Indirect costs, such as staff time, were covered through annual workload planning. Mr. Katz noted that the Council-approved budget included an allocation for the e-AHR subcommittee within it.

(4) *Program Committee* (continuation of discussion of Agenda items 2A. *Composition of the 2000 Program Committee* and 2C. *Appointment of the 2001 Program Committee chair*): Mr. Katz began his comments by describing the process the division had followed, noting that Council had met with chair Claire Moses at its January 11 meeting and that the division had met with co-chair James Henretta at its March meeting. The chairs were provided with Program Committee guidelines and the Custom and Lore document, and that Council and the division had discussed the concerns of Council about the construction of the program and therefore the Program Committee. He added that he hoped Council members would keep in mind that the construction of the Annual Meeting program and the composition of the Program Committee were two different subjects, and that it was possible to have a committee that is not as nearly balanced as Council would like but to have that committee come up with a balanced program by following Program Committee guidelines. He noted that it was very difficult for the co-chairs to balance all the concerns in a limited number of session slots and, in addition, they are hampered because they don't know until the last minute who the subsequent chair and co-chair will be. Having prefaced his remarks, Mr. Katz reported that the chair and co-chair for 2000 for whatever reason had found it more difficult to reach closure on members and that he and Ms. Shapiro had found themselves prodding them in order to get to Council in time for the meeting. He said that the co-chairs' goal was to provide a list without contacting people individually because they knew that Council might want to make suggestions. Mr. Katz stated that Council now had a list to discuss, but that he did not realize until the day previous that six of the proposed members were associated with gender studies. Mr. Katz remarked that he didn't think the current process worked, and that there was a larger problem than the proposed list for 2000. He stated that as far as he could tell, the co-chairs were trying to do exactly what had been asked of them and yet Council still received an unbalanced list. Mr. Katz also stated that he thought Council was faced with two problems: what to do with the proposed 2000 list and what to do about the larger issue in the long term.

Mr. Miller agreed that there was a major problem, and asked how this Program Committee would be viewed by members who are disaffected. Noting that Council did not have time to review the proposed members one-by-one, Mr. Katz suggested that Council instruct him to go back to the co-chairs and say to them that the committee could not have such a large concentration in any single field. Ms. Young remarked that she agreed, but also profoundly disagreed, noting that if members examined the list, there were many historians who have more than one specialty. She pointed out that some had started out in gender studies, but others did not, since gender is not a single field but an approach as is race and class. She encouraged members not to lump fields together too broadly. Mr. Miller noted Ms. Young made a good point, as such a view selected out gender as an issue. Ms. Phillips agreed, but added that perception was another matter, however, and that the method by which committees are formed

suggested two things to her: membership of the committee should never be on the consent calendar and when asking the chair and co-chair to draw up a list of members, by definition it would be a list of “who you know” or a circle of acquaintances. She suggested that it might be time for Council to rethink the way the committee is appointed.

Mr. Katz remarked that he disagreed in one respect since he recalled his first Council meeting when the then co-chair was eviscerated by the Council in a way that he thought was unfair. He stated that the division had tried to remedy that situation by making clear that this was a Research Division responsibility and would encourage Council members not to alter the appointment process at this stage since it would not be a good idea to open up the entire question and give every member of Council a veto on every member of the Program Committee. Ms. Phillips said that she did not disagree, but would urge the committee’s appointment not be placed on the consent calendar.

Ms. Appleby remarked that Council needed to build sufficient time into the appointment process for Council to review. Mr. Grossberg remarked that he operated in a similar fashion in submitting recommendations for membership on the *AHR* board to the Research Division, but noted he had seldom been turned down and asked how the Program Committee could achieve that level of success with the Council. Ms. Appleby suggested asking potential committee members if they would be willing to be a nominee for consideration.

Ms. Young suggested adding one or two members to the committee. Ms. Freitag pointed out that the committee was already the most expensive AHA committee with thirteen members; that staff had required the committee to lower its costs; and that adding members would send exactly the opposite message. Ms. Hill expressed concern that Council was rushing through the discussion, and that she also thought the proposed committee was unbalanced. She suggested that even if Council did decide that it was too late to affect this committee, members needed to make changes for the long term. Mr. Greenberg suggested that members were confusing two things: the hostility toward the program in 1998 and hostility toward this particular committee. He argued the issue was not who was on the committee but what is on the program. He stated that what needed management was clear direction from the Council about what kinds of things have been missing from the program and the instruction to the committee that it would like to see those things addressed. Mr. Miller concurred that Council should identify policy concerns and then advise the committee. Ms. Appleby said Council should not underestimate the difficulty in advising, managing, even micromanaging, the content of the program, that if Council wanted certain things from the program, then it was going to have to demand them.

Ms. Freitag asked Council about the process they were proposing. If Council did believe that it wanted to make adjustments to committee’s composition, then Program Committee guidelines would need to be revised to say that the locus of oversight responsibility is with the Council. This would collapse the distinction Mr. Katz and Mr. Greenberg had made between content of the program and constitution of the committee, between policy responsibility of the Council and oversight of the Research Division. Following additional discussion, members agreed that Ms. Freitag and Ms. Tune should develop a draft for consideration at the January meetings reflecting clarifications in oversight and adjusting the timeline.

Upon query about going back to the 2000 co-chairs to make adjustments, Mr. Katz stated that he thought there might be a good chance either or both would resign. He remarked that both had been under a good deal of pressure and that the Research Division had given them a hard time up to this point. He did not think it would be wise to go back to them at this point to say there are serious problems and you have to reconfigure the whole list.

Members also discussed the pros and cons of adding two people to the committee, and noted that it would cost approximately \$1,000 for each additional member to attend the 3-day meeting. Mr. Palmer argued that the caliber of the committee was more important, and that Council should take a longer view. Mr. Greenberg stated that adding members meant Council had decided to have a deficit. He remarked that he was still not persuaded that changing this

committee solved the real underlying the problem, and that it seemed a very expensive solution from which very little benefit would derive. He suggested that it would be much better to go back to the committee and say to them: The AHA has a serious problem with perceptions about the annual meeting. We know that people were angry about the Seattle program and this is what they were angry about and we are asking you to take that into account. Mr. Greenberg stated it was his perception of the finances of the organization that it was in a period of severely straitened finances, that it had just come through three years of deficit, and that it is finally at a point that it's running back to budget. He added that Council members would always find good reasons to spend more money, but that they also had to find good reasons not to spend more money and find as many good reasons not to go into deficit. For these reasons, he stated that he would oppose any budget increase.

Mr. Fink stated that he was impressed by Mr. Greenberg's logic and proposed that Mr. Katz serve as an informal mentor to the committee, a "point" person from Council, as it deliberates and engage in a continuing informal discussion. Mr. Miller stated that he could write to the committee as president, advising it about Council's discussion and that Council had asked Mr. Katz to work with them. Ms. Hata said she was also persuaded by Mr. Greenberg's arguments and suggested that Council members work with the committee as well and help it generate sessions. Ms. Appleby agreed, but noted that one of the issues was that the committee rejecting proposal, including Council's. Mr. Miller agreed, but said the committee has felt a lack in certain areas, and Council could utilize its networks to help them prepare a better program.

Ms. Young remarked that this is connected to the nature of the meeting. She stated that as more and more presenters are graduate students and chairs are thesis advisers the association becomes a showcase for job seekers. Although this is not a terrible development, the change may be a part of problem. Ms. Young stated it again raised the question of participation of senior scholars in the association and the annual meeting. Mr. Katz remarked that he had also been persuaded by Mr. Greenberg's remarks, and noted that the committees work very hard and that he would like to honor their efforts while trying to avoid problems in the future. Mr. Miller asked if members wanted to consider raising fees to offset costs of additional committee members. Council members agreed they did not. Mr. Greenberg asked members why they should assume when looking at the list of proposed committee members that they wouldn't produce a good program or that adding two members would make a difference? He added that the number with gender studies backgrounds was not by itself an indication of prejudice, noting that simple descriptions of intellectual interests did not predict the quality of the program. Ms. Phillips noted that on this issue she could not agree with Mr. Greenberg. She stated that every committee with which she had worked developed its own agenda and suggested the Program Committee would as well. She remarked that it was important to have distinguished scholars and balance in the composition of the committee or there wouldn't be a balanced program. She stated that she suspected that if the committee was approved as it stood, or even if two people were added, that the Council would have the same problems that led to alienation of members.

Ms. Hata raised the point Ms. Appleby had mentioned about rejection of session proposals, and queried the appeal process. Ms. Tune stated that the guidelines give ultimate authority to the committee, and that there was no AHA body that reviewed their decisions.

Mr. Darnton said that after listening to members' comments, he found himself persuaded by a whole set of mutually inconsistent answers. He suggested authorizing Mr. Katz to go back to the committee and say the Council has grave concerns about the balance of the program, that Council noted the committee had an unbalanced set of members, and ask them to help. This would delegate Mr. Katz to work with them and keep track of their efforts. Ms. Frankel suggested that Council have one or two mandatory sessions to address issues Council feels strongly about. Ms. Appleby stated that she wasn't sure the committee would get Council's message and suggested a compromise of adding one new member and asking them to change one member. Mr. Katz argued that he could deliver a strong message about Council's concerns, that

he would not be delivering a simple injunction to be “fair.” This, in addition to a strong letter from Mr. Miller, should make a difference, along with his best efforts to work with them to reinforce the message. Ms. Freitag also noted that some of Council’s concerns might be addressed with the appointment of Mr. Bernstein’s cochair in 2001, who might be Barbara Hanawalt.

Following additional discussion and upon motion by Ms. Young and second by Mr. Greenberg, Council voted by 7 ayes and 4 nays: (1) to accept the 2000 Program Committee as proposed by Ms. Moses and Mr. Henretta, (2) to authorize Mr. Katz to work with the chair and co-chairs on Council priorities, (3) to authorize Mr. Miller to write the committee summarizing Council concerns, and (4) to ask Ms. Freitag and Ms. Tune to revise Program Committee guidelines for review at the January meeting, addressing issues of timing of committee appointments and locus of responsibility.

Council unanimously approved the division’s recommendation of Michael Bernstein, University of California, San Diego, as 2001 chair. Council agreed that the co-chair could be approved by e-mail ballot prior to the January meetings.

(5) *Conference Group for Central European History’s (CGCEH) statement on the use of legal means to settle academic disputes*: Members discussed CGCEH’s request that the AHA add its name as a signatory to its statement condemning recourse to legal action in scholarly disputes. The statement arose from legal action threatened by Daniel Jonah Goldhagen following an unfavorable review of his book *Hitler’s Willing Executioners* by Ruth Bettina Birn in *Historiographical Review*. Ms. Phillips stated that the Professional Division could examine the issue at its fall meeting and make a recommendation to Council. Mr. Katz stated that the Research Division would advise against signing the CGCEH statement.

C. *Report of the Teaching Division*: Mr. Fink reported on the division’s March 14 meeting, noting that the main theme of the division’s work had been a focus on expanding the professional community of history educators with particular attention to the connection to school teachers. He noted the division had in mind a number of ways in the long term to expand the sense of community and sense of identify between historians and these history educators. One initiative would achieve a better sense of the nature of collaboration, or the nature of ongoing initiatives between university/college departments and K-12 teachers. He reported that the division had asked and was now receiving information and would summarize it in an article for *Perspectives*. A second area of focus had to do with the Annual Meeting itself where the division has inaugurated two workshop sessions, one on U.S. and one on world history. Mr. Fink stated that the division saw the sessions as document-centered workshops for a non-specialized audience of university faculty, graduate students, and high school teachers. In addition, the division has discussed creating partnership projects centered in departments around the country for ongoing outreach to area teachers. He stated that the division had a good instance of that in his department at the University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill which has been an invaluable experience not only for members of his department but also for the high school teachers. He noted the division was beginning to learn about other projects and hoped to share some of the information.

Mr. Fink brought the following items for action: 1. *Travel funds for contributing editor to attend division meeting*: The division requested travel funds for the contributing editor for teaching to participate *ex officio* in division meetings. Mr. Fink noted that *Perspectives* offered a voice for teaching-related matters and that the editor played an important functional link between teaching-related issues and the division and would therefore benefit by attending the meetings. Commenting on the proposal, Mr. Miller noted that vice presidents already have a direct voice to *Perspectives*, and that he saw the contributing editor as an independent, separate voice. Mr. Fink stated the division saw the editor’s participation in an *ex officio* capacity and that members had thought the editor better positioned to convey the division’s positions. Ms. Phillips suggested that the editor could be included in the division’s e-mail discussions. Mr. Darnton remarked that

he was concerned about costs in a time of fairly stringent AHA budgets. Although the division projected costs of only \$305 for the fall meeting, there was no way to predict what they would be in the future and he was hesitant to set a precedent. Following additional discussion, and upon motion of Mr. Fink and second by Mr. Darnton, members agreed by a vote of 7 ayes, 3 nays, and 1 abstention to authorize the one-time attendance of the contributing editor for teaching at the fall 1998 Teaching Division meeting.

2. *Proposal for "Certificates of Distinction" for Secondary-Level Textbooks:*

Council unanimously approved the division's recommendation to establish an award to recognize outstanding textbooks at the secondary level. Called "Certificates of Distinction for Secondary-Level Textbooks," the award will be offered annually to recognize outstanding contributions of textbooks at the secondary level. Textbooks in the fields of United States history and world history will be eligible for the honorific prize, rotating between U.S. history one year and world history the next. The division will establish review criteria and forward to Council members that will serve as the committee's selection guidelines. There will be no minimum/maximum number of certificates that can be awarded; all deserving books will receive a certificate.

A six-member committee, appointed by the Committee on Committees, will make selections: two secondary-school historians and two postsecondary historians with specialties in U.S. history, and one secondary historian and one postsecondary historian with a specialty in world history. All committee work would be completed by mail/e-mail to hold costs at a minimum, with the committee in all probability dividing into working subcommittees for preliminary sorting and elimination. The Teaching Division would retain oversight on policy and procedural matters, and assist in publicizing selections.

Ms. Frankel proposed, and Council concurred, that implementation be delayed for one year while staff develops lists of textbooks and publishers; surveys K-12 members to ensure no conflict of interest and to solicit names for the Committee on Committees (ConC); and contacts a number of affiliates to ascertain interest in cosponsoring the award. She anticipates the committee will be appointed by the ConC in the fall of 1999. Ms. Frankel will e-mail the list of criteria which had been included in the January agenda books.

D. *Report of the AHR Editor:* Mr. Grossberg added remarks to his written report, which included comparative data on the 1998-99 budget and an overview of the Indiana University portion of the journal's budget for the past several years. He reported that he had also completed contract negotiations with the journal's printer, Cadmus Journal Services. Mr. Greenberg asked if the contract was between the *AHR* and Cadmus or the AHA and Cadmus. Mr. Grossberg reported that he thought it was between the *AHR* and the publisher since he has signed it in the past. Mr. Katz noted that the AHA is the signatory, and that it seemed better for this to be signed at the headquarters..

Mr. Grossberg remarked that this was his third year at the journal and that when he assumed the editorship he had found a variety of things which he thought needed rethinking. Over the past three years the staff has rewritten article and book review guidelines, created new film guidelines, and rewritten all letters going out to manuscript readers. He stated that it seemed that the last component was to look at the journal itself. Mr. Grossberg noted that here, he sees a tension--one *AHR* is a journal of articles and another *AHR* is a journal of book reviews. He discussed the tensions between the two and what he defined as the mission of the journal which is to speak across the specialties of the discipline to a set of common interests. Mr. Grossberg stated the staff had been able to achieve this level of consistency with the article session and now wanted to examine the book review section. He pointed out that the present construction of the book review section had been by accretion and not by any particular logic or plan. Since one of Mr. Grossberg's goals is to define fairness at the journal by having articles and manuscripts dealt with in the same way, by the same standards, he had found this particular application difficult to defend. He reported that the staff had been working on the revision for a year and had tried to move to a set of classifications that represented the discipline as it is done in the present more

effectively, that could be presented logically, and that could be presented in a clear fashion. Mr. Grossberg stated that the staff had tried to do this in two ways. First, by eliminating the general category and substituting two new categories, methods/theory and comparative/world. Second, by creating a series of geographical areas in each category with a general section at the start that dealt with books that cover more than one region or nation state and then move in a geographic way. He remarked that the *AHR* staff wasn't wedded to particular scheme, but did want to move to a more logical and uniform system that could be applied across time and space. While noting there was no perfect system, the staff did want to develop a more logical one that is defensible. He also noted that the staff expected there to be a firestorm of criticisms. He asked Council for its reaction to the general idea and to the specific categories both now and in the next few weeks. The revision will then be refined and sent to Board of Editors for comment. The entire process must be finalized by September 1 in order to classify books for the February 1999 issue.

Mr. Katz said the Research Division also anticipated some criticism but also believed that the new classification responded in part to the way historians have organized themselves. He also noted that the text which accompanies it will be critical. Ms. Appleby agreed, and suggested that the staff explain the types of books that the *Review* receives. Ms. Phillips also expressed support, particularly the addition of subheads. Ms. Martin expressed a minor quibble from a Latin Americanist perspective, asking if Latin America would be overwhelmed by U.S. and if Mexicanists might not consider this one more stage in "lumping" Mexico with U.S. and Canada. Ms. Young said she thought Middle East classifications posed a similar problem. Mr. Grossberg reported that there would be detailed explanation in the front of the February issue. In response to Mr. Miller's query if it should also appear in newsletter, Mr. Grossberg said that he viewed this as a journal issue. He confirmed that he was not seeking Council approval of the reclassification since editorial policy was in the hand of the Board of Editors, but did want to make members aware since the staff did expect criticism.

E. *Report of the Committee on Minority Historians*: Ms. Frankel provided members with an oral report of the CMH's spring meeting and brought one item for action. She stated that the American Council on Education (ACE) had asked organizations to endorse its affirmative action statement, and provided members with a copy of the statement and the AHA's own affirmative action statement approved in May 1996. Mr. Greenberg asked if other learned societies have been asked to endorse the statement since he did not see any on the list in the agenda book. Ms. Frankel said that the CMH was not asked, but staff had seen the appeal in the ACE newsletter and took it to the committee. Following additional discussion, members unanimously voted to accept the CMH's recommendation to endorse the ACE statement.

F. *Report of the Committee on Women Historians*: Members were provided with a written report from CWH chair Carla Hesse, University of California, Berkeley, on the committee's April 19 meeting.

G. *Report of the Task Force on Relations with Graduate Students in the AHA (TFROGS)*: Ms. Hill provided members with a report of TFROG's April 10 conference call and brought the following items for action: 1. *Name change*: The Task Force proposed changing its name to the Task Force on Graduate Education since its purpose went beyond defining graduate students' role in the AHA. Ms. Hill reported that the Task Force is concerned with the job market, advisor/advisee relationships, and successful navigation by students through graduate programs. She also reported that the reconfigured composition had been of tremendous assistance. She expressed some concern about Council's action to raise annual meeting registration fees for graduate students by \$5. Following additional discussion, Council unanimously approved the Task Force's recommendation to change its name.

2. *Contributing editor/liaison to Perspectives*: The Task Force asked Council to approve an experimental slot for a volunteer "contributing editor" to the newsletter who would focus specifically on graduate student issues. The editor would help to keep issues important to graduate students in the foreground and provide another means for assisting the current graduate

student membership. Since Council does not normally approve appointments, Mr. Miller noted for the minutes members' strong support for the proposal.

H. *Reports from Other Committees:* 1. *Report of the 1998 Nominating Committee:* Members were provided with a copy of Lillie Johnson Edward's report of the 1998 Nominating Committee listing the candidates for elective office.

2. *Report from the Advisory Committee on Historical Diplomatic Documentation:* Members were provided with a copy of the State Department Advisory Committee on Historical Diplomatic Documentation for the period between October 1, 1996 and September 30, 1997.

I. *Exit reports from past Council members:* Members were provided copies of exit reports from Caroline Bynum, Peter Stearns, Barbara Ramusack, and David Trask.

**12. Continuing and New Business:** A. *Terms and limitations on terms for AHA representatives -- Committee on Committee guidelines: SSRC and Advisory Committee on Historical Diplomatic Documentation.* Due to time constraints, Council agreed to discuss these appointments on the Council listserv.

B. *Council listserv protocol:* Members reviewed draft protocol for use of the Council listserv for votes. Since the document has the status of procedure defined by the presiding officer it required no vote. Following discussion, Mr. Miller agreed to review with parliamentarian Michael Les Benedict to ensure procedures were on a solid constitutional basis. (See Attachment 3 for the final July 1, 1998 version).

**13. Executive Session:** Council members met in executive session on Sunday and Monday. For the minutes, Mr. Miller reported the following:

**14. Adjournment:** The meeting adjourned on Monday, June 1, at 3:30 p.m.

Recorded by  
Sharon K. Tune



### **Guidelines for the Employment of Part-Time and Temporary Faculty in History**

The employment of historians as part-time and temporary faculty has increased dramatically in recent years. Such appointments, which form part of the diverse category of academics often referred to as "adjunct professors," have traditionally been used to supplement course offerings and to provide temporary replacements for tenure-track or tenured faculty. More recently, an increasing proportion of colleges and universities have responded to financial exigencies by embedding ongoing part-time and temporary positions in their employment structure. The AHA, like other professional organizations, has the obligation and the expertise to question the impact of such institutional practices on the quality of education and to promote the fair treatment of the teaching staff. Given the ramifications of this widespread trend in the employment of historians, the AHA seeks to ensure that cost-driven reliance on part-time and temporary faculty does not undermine the quality of education in history. We provide these guidelines to help departments and institutions balance budgetary and instructional exigencies and to give individuals a broader context in which to negotiate their terms of employment.

1. The AHA encourages full-time employment for historians, while recognizing that the use of part-time and temporary faculty may sometimes be necessary or desirable to enrich and expand a curriculum. Where part-time or temporary faculty must be hired, the AHA encourages departments to maximize the assignments for the individuals hired.
2. Departments hiring part-time or temporary faculty should recruit them actively and select the best available candidates, based on clear criteria and with standards commensurate to the assignment and to the institution's mission.
3. Institutions should provide equitable salaries for part-time and temporary faculty, based on a standardized salary policy, across disciplines, for commensurate qualifications.
4. Institutions should allow part-time and temporary faculty access to fringe benefits, especially health and life insurance, sick leave, and retirement plans.
5. Departments should provide with each appointment a clear contractual statement of expectations and assignments, including in-class teaching and such other responsibilities as course preparation, student advisement, and service. Additional compensation should be provided to part-time and temporary faculty who are willing to undertake additional duties that enhance educational quality (e.g. advising on major research projects, committee assignments, and the like).. Departments should keep careful statistics of the percentages of courses taught by faculty who are not permanent, full-time employees, and should make this information widely available.
7. Part-time and temporary faculty should be considered fairly for tenure-track opportunities for which they are qualified.
8. Departments should provide sufficient notice of appointment or reappointment to enable adequate course preparation.
9. Departments should engage in long-term planning whenever possible, providing: (a) extended terms of appointment, where that is consistent with institutional needs; and (b)

sufficient job security to encourage and support continuing involvement with students and colleagues.

10. Departments should provide orientation, mentoring, and access to all appropriate departmental communications to part-time and temporary faculty, in order to incorporate them as colleagues in the intellectual life of the institution.
11. Institutions should provide appropriate working conditions essential to performing assigned responsibilities, ranging from office space, supplies, support services, equipment (for example, telephone, fax, and computer access), parking permits, library access, after-hours access to buildings, e-mail accounts, and the like.
12. Part-time and temporary faculty should have opportunities to participate in appropriate collegial processes related to their contractual responsibilities for teaching and curricular planning.
13. Because good scholars make good teachers, part-time and temporary faculty should have access to opportunities for scholarly development, including campus grant programs, support for research travel, and support to present their work at professional conferences.
14. Institutions should implement the regular evaluation of part-time and temporary faculty, based on established criteria consistent with their assigned responsibilities. This will aid in maintaining high standards of classroom instruction, equity in reappointment, and the recognition of merit. Class evaluations will also provide documentation to support departmental letters of recommendation written in support of part-time and temporary faculty seeking full-time employment.
15. In institutions where part-time and temporary faculty serve with some continuity, they should have opportunities for merit increases and professional advancement.
16. Institutions should provide a grievance procedure for part-time and temporary faculty, to deal with cases of alleged discrimination, violation of contract, or denial of academic freedom.

Approved by AHA Council, June 1, 1998

## Attachment 2

### AHA Policy Statement on Employment Advertising

Job discrimination is illegal, and open hiring on the basis of merit depends on fair practice in recruitment. Except in those cases in which federal law allows specific preference in hiring (for example, religious institutions), candidates must be evaluated exclusively on professional criteria and must not be discriminated against on the basis of sex, race, color, national origin, sexual orientation, religion, ideology, political affiliation, veteran status, age, physical handicap, or marital status.

Advertisements in *Perspectives* must adhere to nondiscriminatory policies set forth by the AHA and the federal government. *Perspectives* will not accept advertisements that contain wording that directly or indirectly links sex, race, color, national origin, sexual orientation, ideology, political affiliation, veteran status, age, physical handicap, or marital status to a specific job. Likewise, *Perspectives* will not accept advertisements that contain wording requiring applicants to submit materials for the sole purpose of identifying the applicant's sex, race, color, national origin, sexual orientation, ideology, political affiliation, veteran status, age, physical handicap, or marital status.

*Perspectives* will, however, accept the following listings, which are consistent with AHA guidelines and federal law: (1) open listings for minority vita banks that are clearly not linked to specific jobs, fields, or specializations; (2) employment ads that require religious identification or affiliation for consideration for the position, a preference that is allowed to religious institutions under federal law; and (3) notices of fellowships that are restricted to specified groups.

The AHA retains the right to refuse or edit employment advertisements submitted to *Perspectives* that are not consonant with these guidelines or with the principles of Title VII of the 1964 Civil Rights Act. The AHA accepts advertisements from academic institutions that are under censure by the American Association of University Professors (AAUP). These ads are identified by an asterisk (or, in the case of display ads, in a box on the next page) to advise applicants that the employing institution or its administration, including the administrative officers and the governing board of the institution, have been censured by the AAUP and that further information may be obtained from the relevant AAUP *Bulletin*.

The AHA recommends that all employers of historians adhere to the following guidelines: (1) All positions for historians should be advertised in the Employment Information section of AHA's *Perspectives*. (2) advertisements for positions should note any contingencies that may affect the availability of the positions. For example, clear indication should be given as to whether a position has actually been authorized or is contingent upon budgetary or other administrative approval; and job descriptions and selection criteria should not be altered without reopening the search. (3) All applications and inquiries for a position should be acknowledged promptly and courteously (within two weeks of receipt, if possible); acknowledgments should inform the applicant about the initial action on the application or inquiry. (4) At all stages in a search, affirmative action/equal opportunity guidelines must be respected. (5) As candidates are eliminated, they should be notified promptly and courteously. (6) Interviews, wherever

conducted, should proceed in a manner that respects the professional and personal integrity of candidates, and interviewers should avoid questions that may be in conflict with the letter and spirit of federal anti-discriminatory laws. Interviews should take place on time, and candidates should be allowed sufficient time in interviews to develop their candidacies in some depth.

The Council of the AHA reminds all historians of the Association's *Statement on Standards of Professional Conduct*, which addresses fair practice in recruitment and professional review and promotion decisions, due process in dismissal or suspension, and sexual harassment. For a copy, call or write the AHA, 400 A Street S.E., Washington, D.C. 20003. (202) 544-2422. FAX (202) 544-8307. E-mail: [aha@theaha.org](mailto:aha@theaha.org).

Revised by by the Professional Division; approved by Council, May 31, 1998

### Protocol for Council Action Using Listserve

This statement establishes the principles regarding use of the <98c> listserve to include the entire Council in votes and other pressing matters that have up to now -- under the limitations of communications prior to electronic technologies -- gone for action to the Executive Committee.

Article V, Section 3, of the Constitution states that the Executive Committee is “to transact necessary business in the interim between meetings of the Council”. Council agreed on June 1, 1998, that this language does not exclude Council from acting as a body during interims, via mail and e-mail votes, when possible, as has recently become the practice for ballots taken by regular mail and by FAX.

Matters that bind the organization as a whole to action or policy will be circulated to the entire Council, particularly when uncertainty or diverging perspectives make collective discussion productive. The Executive committee will routinely receive only questions requiring preliminary formulation or focusing, including preparation of agendas for Council meetings, beyond matters delegated to it by the Consitution. The president selects the method of Council communication and action on a case-by-case basis, taking into consideration the staffing requirements of each and other commitments at Headquarters that may influence the choice of medium.

Given the occasional urgency of matters arising in this context, if the momentary unavailability, or unresponsiveness, of members of Council fails to produce a quorum (one-half) voting within time limits stated in a request for action, the president may transfer the question to the Executive Committee for a decision by a simple majority.

As collective discussion constitutes a primary reason for use of the electronic listserve, members of Council should circulate all substantive comments on points at issue to the entire membership of the listserve. They should, where software permits, avoid attaching strings of prior messages to their postings, copying and including only the text necessary to develop their points.

The <98c> list will include Association staff who participate *ex officio* in regular Council sessions, so as to facilitat their technical support of Council business proceeding electronically. Listserve discussions will constitute the official record of Council deliberations.

Approved July 1998

# **1998 AHA Membership Report**

## **1. Membership Status Report (As of March 31, 1998)**

- a. Membership trends by dues category
- b. Ten-year trend: Active AHA Members, 1988-98
- c. Ten-year trend: Dues paying AHA Members by category, 1988-98
- d. Ten-year trend: Dues changes, 1988-98
- e. Current Membership by state
- f. AHA members per 100,000 in state population
- g. Current Membership by country

## **2. Membership payments report**

## **3. Highest degree of AHA members**

## **4. Principal employment of AHA members**

- a. Position (nonacademic)
- b. Rank (academic)

## **5. Member specializations**

- a. Breakdown of regional specializations (compared to 1992)
- b. Breakdown of thematic specializations (compared to 1992)

## **6. Use of computers**

## **7. Other organizations to which AHA members belong**

## **8. Dropped/resigned members by category**

## **9. ISP status report**

## **10. Subscription status report**

# 1. Membership Status Report

(as of March 31, 1998)

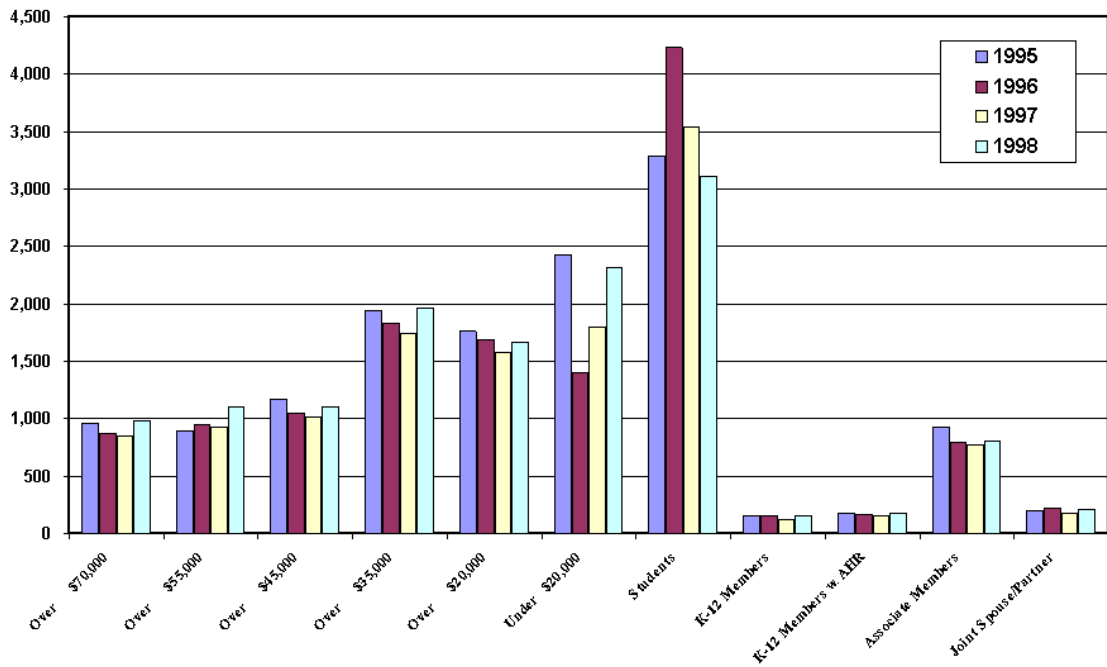
Member by Status	Income Range	Number of Members				Var 1997-98	Number Delinq	Paid & Delinquent
		1995	1996	1997	1998			
Code 10	Over \$70,000	956	876	845	982	137	51	1,033
Code 11	Over \$55,000	895	944	929	1102	173	94	1,196
Code 12	Over \$45,000	1,167	1,048	1,013	1105	92	91	1,196
Code 13	Over \$35,000	1,940	1,835	1,746	1958	212	209	2,167
Code 14	Over \$20,000	1,769	1,689	1,582	1664	82	192	1,856
Code 15	Under \$20,000	2,425	1,398	1,795	2311	516	315	2,626
Code 17	Students	3,289	4,233	3,543	3108	(435)	514	3,622
Code 18	K-12 Members	159	155	116	154	38	23	177
Code 19	K-12 Members w. AHR	171	162	154	181	27	12	193
Code 20	Associate Members	922	798	771	807	36	104	911
Code 03	Joint Spouse/Partner	<u>200</u>	<u>226</u>	<u>177</u>	208	<u>31</u>	<u>16</u>	<u>224</u>
	Subtotal	13,893	13,364	12,671	13,580	909	1,621	15,201
Non-Paying Members								
Code 05	Life Member	424	464	484	457	(27)		
Code 06	Fifty Year	108	98	149	132	(17)		
Code 07	Honorary	21	21	21	15	(6)		
Code 08	Trustee	5	5	1	1	0		
Other Members		<u>15</u>	<u>14</u>	<u>14</u>	<u>6</u>	(8)		
	Subtotal	573	602	669	611	(58)		
Total Paying & Non-Paying Members		14,466	13,966	13,340	14,191	<u>851</u>		
Delinquent Members		<u>654</u>	<u>753</u>	<u>2,292</u>	<u>1,045</u>	<u>(1,247)</u>		
	Total	15,120	14,719	15,632	15,236	(396)		

<b><u>Membership by Gender</u></b>			
	<b># Members</b>	<b>% Tot.</b>	<b>% Ans.</b>
<b>Male</b>	<b>7,270</b>	<b>51%</b>	<b>65%</b>
<b>Female</b>	<b>3,879</b>	<b>27%</b>	<b>35%</b>
<b>Unidentified</b>	<b>3,042</b>	<b>21%</b>	
	<b>14,191</b>		

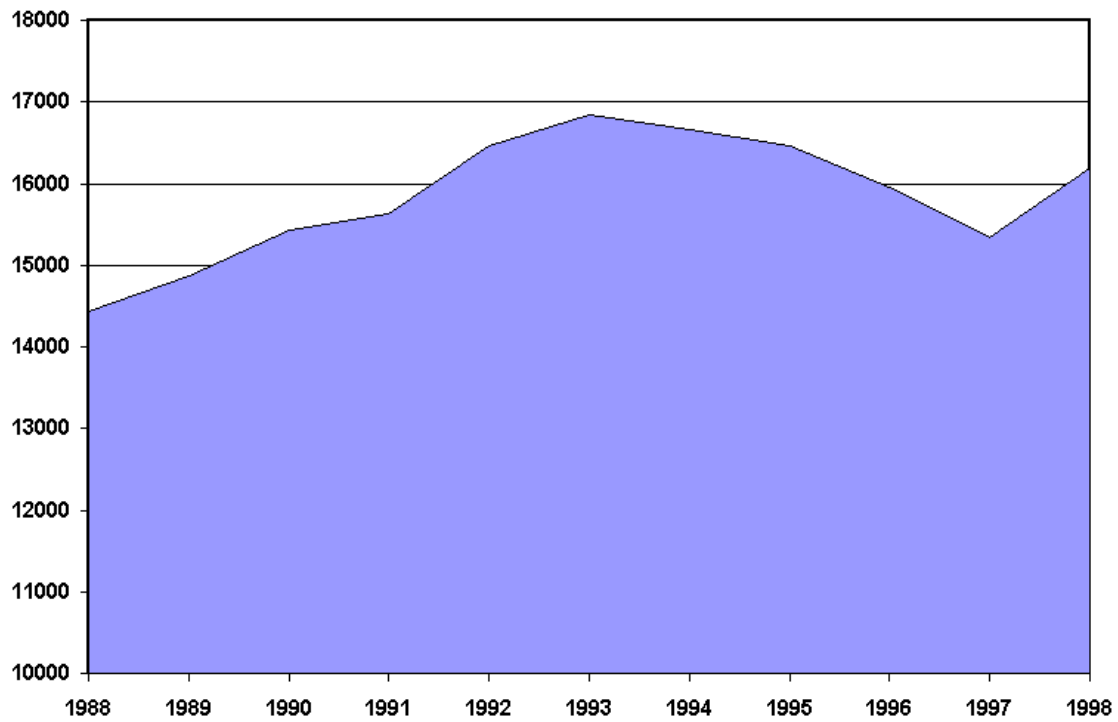
<b><u>Membership by Race</u></b>			
	<b># Members</b>	<b>% Tot.</b>	<b>% Ans.</b>
<b>African American</b>	<b>150</b>	<b>1.1%</b>	<b>1.9%</b>
<b>Native American</b>	<b>33</b>	<b>0.2%</b>	<b>0.4%</b>
<b>Asian American</b>	<b>205</b>	<b>1.4%</b>	<b>2.7%</b>
<b>Latino</b>	<b>153</b>	<b>1.1%</b>	<b>2.0%</b>
<b>Caucasian</b>	<b>6,906</b>	<b>48.7%</b>	<b>89.7%</b>
<b>Other</b>	<b>250</b>	<b>1.8%</b>	<b>3.2%</b>
<b>Unidentified/Blank</b>	<b>6,494</b>	<b>45.8%</b>	
<b>Total Members</b>	<b>14,191</b>		



**1.a.: Membership Trends by Dues Category**

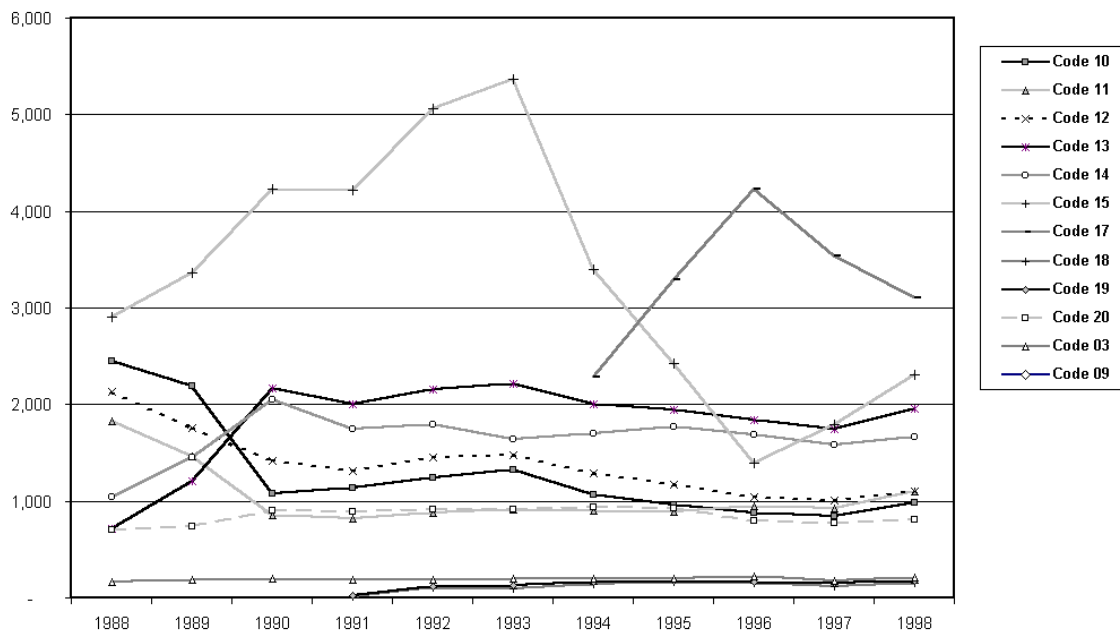


**1.b.: Ten-year Trend: Active AHA Members, 1988-98**

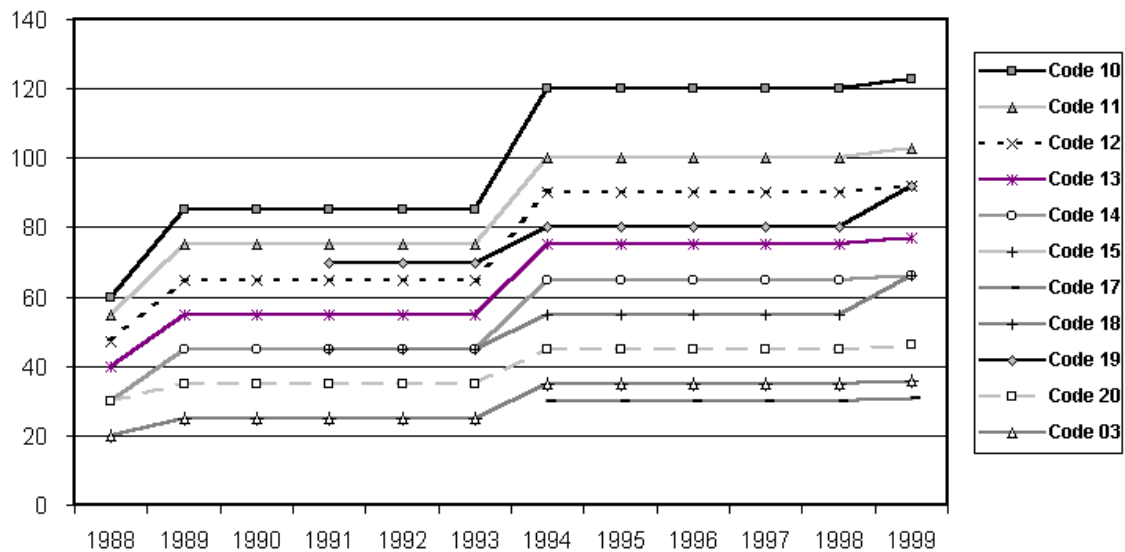


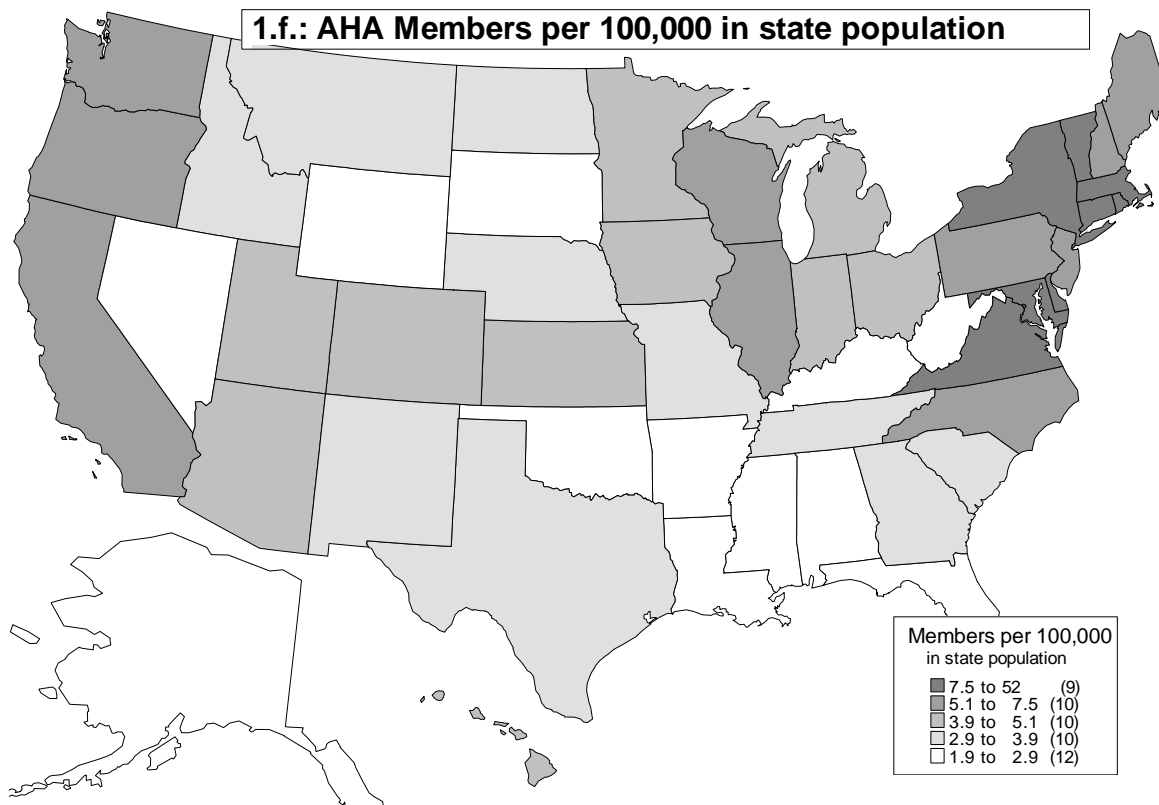
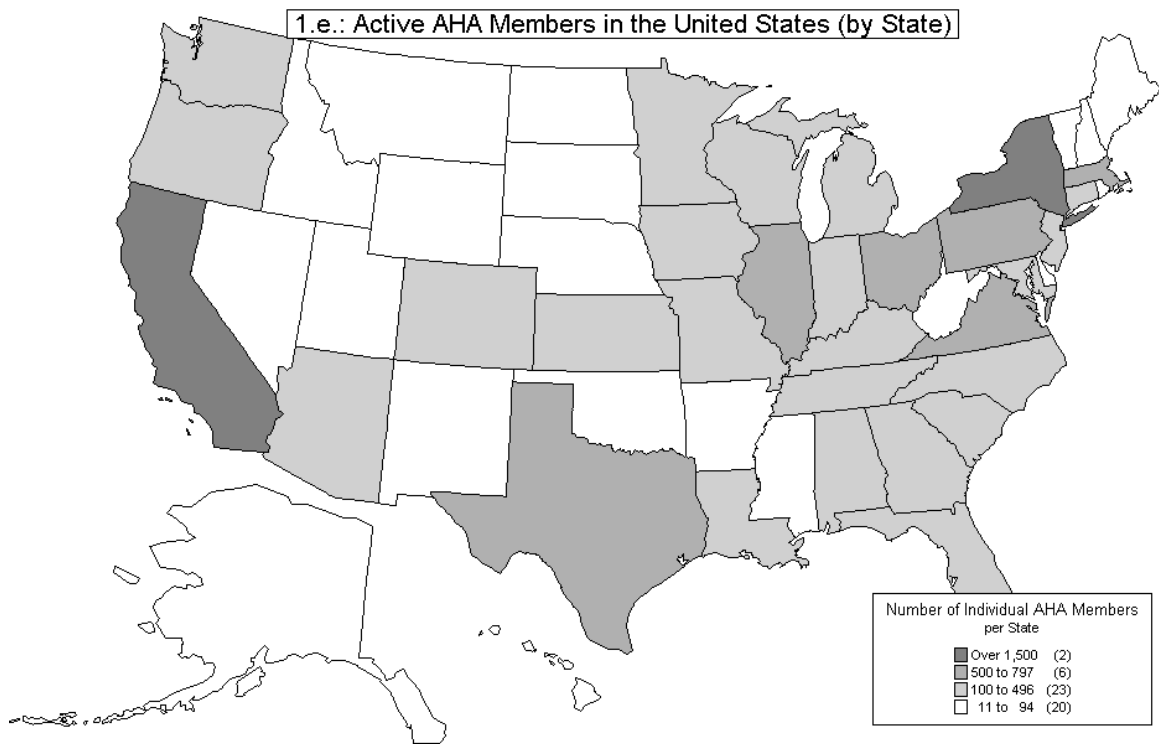
### 1.c.: Ten-year Trend: Dues paying AHA Members by category, 1988-98

Note that code classifications have changed dramatically over the period in question.  
See chart on page 1. For current descriptions.

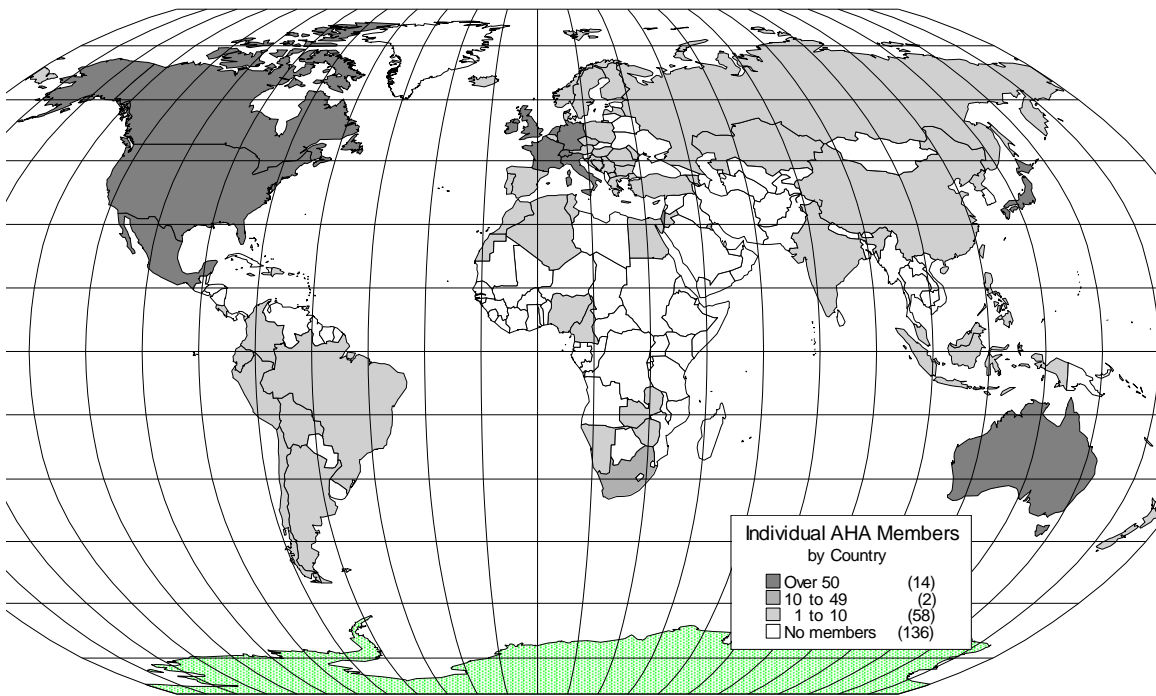


### 1.d.: Ten-year Trend: Dues changes, 1988-98





1.g.: AHA Members by country



<b>3. Highest Degree of AHA Members</b>			
<b>Highest Degree</b>	<b>Total</b>	<b>% of Total</b>	<b>% of Ans</b>
Doctor of Philosophy	7,201	50.74%	70.84%
Master of Arts	2,293	16.16%	22.56%
Bachelor of Arts	408	2.88%	4.01%
Juris Doctor; Doctor of Law	90	0.63%	0.89%
All But Dissertation	47	0.33%	0.46%
High School Diploma	24	0.17%	0.24%
Master of Philosophy	21	0.15%	0.21%
Doctor of Medicine	15	0.11%	0.15%
Doctor of Education	13	0.09%	0.13%
Associate in Arts	11	0.08%	0.11%
Master of Divinity	6	0.04%	0.06%
Bachelor of Law	5	0.04%	0.05%
Bachelor of Science	5	0.04%	0.05%
Master of Business Administration	5	0.04%	0.05%
Master of Library Science	5	0.04%	0.05%
Master of Science	5	0.04%	0.05%
Other	3	0.02%	0.03%
Doctor of Letters	2	0.01%	0.02%
Master of Education	2	0.01%	0.02%
Bachelor of Philosophy	1	0.01%	0.01%
Doctor of Dental Surgery	1	0.01%	0.01%
Licentiate of Sacred Theology	1	0.01%	0.01%
Master of Arts in Teaching	1	0.01%	0.01%
	4,026	28.37%	
<b>Grand Total</b>	<b>14,191</b>		

<b>4. Principal Employment of AHA Members</b>			
<b>Principal Employment</b>	<b>Total</b>	<b>As % Tot.</b>	<b>As % of Ans.</b>
University	3,140	22.13%	54.72%
4-Year College	870	6.13%	15.16%
Jr. College, 2-Yr. College, or Tech. Inst.	302	2.13%	5.26%
Other	291	2.05%	5.07%
Elementary, Middle, or Secondary School	275	1.94%	4.79%
Self-Employed	272	1.92%	4.74%
Business or Industry	151	1.06%	2.63%
U.S. Government	101	0.71%	1.76%
Research Center, Library/Archives	96	0.68%	1.67%
Nonprofit Organization	86	0.61%	1.50%
Museum	41	0.29%	0.71%
State Government	33	0.23%	0.58%
Historical Organization	28	0.20%	0.49%
Private Foundation	17	0.12%	0.30%
Local Government	15	0.11%	0.26%
Government (Non-U.S.)	11	0.08%	0.19%
Professional Association	7	0.05%	0.12%
Trade Association	2	0.01%	0.03%
No answer	8,453	59.57%	
<b>Grand Total</b>	<b>14,191</b>		

*NB: When the new membership forms were instituted in late 1996, the employment category was split into three separate questions, asking place of employment, nonacademic positions, and academic rank, where applicable. There is some overlap in responses to the three questions, notably among public historians who also teach at a college or university, and among college and university faculty and students who also indicate some outside consulting work.*

<b>4.a.: AHA Members' Positions (nonacademic)</b>			
<b>Position</b>	<b>Total</b>	<b>As % Tot.</b>	<b>As % of Ans.</b>
Retired Historian	657	4.63%	18.39%
Other	575	4.05%	16.10%
Administrator	434	3.06%	12.15%
Researcher/Consultant	431	3.04%	12.07%
Independent Historian	295	2.08%	8.26%
Public Historian (General)	250	1.76%	7.00%
Unemployed	244	1.72%	6.83%
Editor, Writer, Publisher	238	1.68%	6.66%
Library/Museum Staff	151	1.06%	4.23%
Businessperson	95	0.67%	2.66%
Government Historian	76	0.54%	2.13%
Amateur Historian	62	0.44%	1.74%
Archivist	57	0.40%	1.60%
Bibliographer	7	0.05%	0.20%
No answer or academic rank only	10,619	74.83%	
<b>Grand Total</b>	<b>14,191</b>		

<b>4.b.: AHA Members' Academic Ranks</b>			
<b>Academic Rank</b>	<b>Total</b>	<b>As % Tot.</b>	<b>As % of Ans.</b>
Professor	2,522	17.8%	27.0%
Graduate Student	1,701	12.0%	18.2%
Assistant Professor	1,461	10.3%	15.7%
Associate Professor	1,294	9.1%	13.9%
PhD Candidate	983	6.9%	10.5%
Lecturer/Instructor	575	4.1%	6.2%
Adjunct	402	2.8%	4.3%
Part-Time	219	1.5%	2.3%
Staff	122	0.9%	1.3%
Undergraduate Student	54	0.4%	0.6%
No answer or nonacademic position only	4,858	34.2%	
<b>Grand Total</b>	<b>14,191</b>		

**5. Member Specializations  
(ranked by number of  
selections)**

(ranked by number of  
selections)

<b>Specializations by Category</b>	<b># Selected</b>	<b>As % of Total</b>
360: Europe	2,007	5.79%
540: U.S. since 1920	1,625	4.69%
539: U.S. 1877-1920	1,265	3.65%
745: Women	1,152	3.32%
743: Social	1,012	2.92%
538: U.S. 1815-1877	993	2.86%
530: U.S. History (General)	986	2.84%
709: Cultural	932	2.69%
723: Intellectual	802	2.31%
737: Religion	712	2.05%
412: 20th-Century Europe and 2 World Wars	661	1.91%
405: Modern Europe, ca. 1750-1914	659	1.90%
711: Diplomatic/International	641	1.85%
397: Early Modern Europe, ca. 1500-1750	603	1.74%
537: American Revolution and Early Republic	581	1.68%
735: Political	569	1.64%
739: Science and Technology	488	1.41%
730: Military	483	1.39%
701: African American	438	1.26%
510: Canada	437	1.26%
406: Britain and Ireland, ca. 1750-1914	397	1.15%
746: World	393	1.13%
388: Europe, ca. 1000-1500	382	1.10%
726: Labor	382	1.10%
719: Gender	366	1.06%
744: Urban	364	1.05%
460: Latin America	358	1.03%
491: European Discovery and Exploration of North America	354	1.02%
398: British Isles, ca. 1500-1750	349	1.01%
727: Law	341	0.98%
999: Other	330	0.95%
722: Historiography	326	0.94%
417: Germany and the 2 World Wars	319	0.92%
533: Southern United States	315	0.91%



410: Germany and Austria, ca. 1750-1914	313	0.90%
407: France, ca. 1750-1914	299	0.86%
531: General and Regional Studies of the United States	276	0.80%
712: Economic	267	0.77%
411: Russia, ca. 1750-1914	266	0.77%
418: Soviet Union and the 2 World Wars	242	0.70%
729: Medicine and Health	241	0.70%
536: Western United States	239	0.69%
725: Jewish	234	0.68%
419: Postwar Europe, 1945-present	232	0.67%
535: Midwestern United States	229	0.66%
230: China	220	0.63%
387: Early Middle Ages (Europe)	190	0.55%
320: Islamic World, Middle East, and North Africa	189	0.55%
443: Colonial Period American Indian	181	0.52%
399: France, ca. 1500-1750	173	0.50%
413: Britain and Ireland and the 2 World Wars	170	0.49%
713: Education	167	0.48%
747: Western Civilization	163	0.47%
441: American Indian	162	0.47%
250: Japan	156	0.45%
396: Mediterranean Europe, ca. 1000-1500	153	0.44%
742: Society, Social System, and Values	144	0.42%
704: Art and Architecture	138	0.40%
731: Minorities and Minority Issues	134	0.39%
340: Sub-Saharan Africa	131	0.38%
515: Quebec	129	0.37%
390: British Isles, ca. 1000-1500	127	0.37%
714: Environment	125	0.36%
715: Ethnohistory	124	0.36%
425: Postwar Germany and Austria	122	0.35%
444: 19th C. American Indian	121	0.35%
724: International Relations	121	0.35%
426: Postwar Russia	113	0.33%
445: 20th C. American Indian	111	0.32%
466: General and Regional Caribbean	109	0.31%
464: General and Regional Mexico	107	0.31%
741: Slavery	107	0.31%
493: Colonial New England	106	0.31%

414: France and the 2 World Wars	104	0.30%
238: Republic of China, 1912-1949	101	0.29%
717: Family	98	0.28%
706: Business	96	0.28%
754: 20th C. World	96	0.28%
403: German Principalities, ca. 1500-1750	94	0.27%
402: Italian States, ca. 1500-1750	93	0.27%
237: Ch'ing Dynasty, 1644-1911 (China)	92	0.27%
389: Northwestern Europe, ca. 1000-1500	92	0.27%
462: General and Regional Latin America	88	0.25%
401: Spain and Portugal, ca. 1500-1750	87	0.25%
490: North America	85	0.25%
708: Comparative	85	0.25%
370: Rome	84	0.24%
710: Demography, Population, and Social Life	81	0.23%
740: Sexuality/Gay/Lesbian	80	0.23%
495: Colonial Chesapeake	76	0.22%
721: Health and Disease	75	0.22%
420: Postwar Britain and Ireland	73	0.21%
361: Ancient Greece	70	0.20%
494: Middle Colonies	68	0.20%
736: Public	65	0.19%
404: Russia, ca. 1500-1750	64	0.18%
280: South Asia	63	0.18%
239: People's Republic of China, since 1949	61	0.18%
373: Later Roman Empire	60	0.17%
483: 20th-Century Latin America	59	0.17%
705: Asian American	58	0.17%
718: Gay/Lesbian	57	0.16%
728: Literature	55	0.16%
391: France, ca. 1000-1500	54	0.16%
259: Taisho and Early Showa Japan, 1912-1941	53	0.15%
345: Sub-Saharan Africa 20th C.	53	0.15%
386: Western Europe	53	0.15%
440: The Americas	53	0.15%
285: Modern South Asia	52	0.15%
380: Byzantium	52	0.15%
738: Rural	52	0.15%
350: Southern Africa	48	0.14%

347: Western Africa	47	0.14%
409: Italy, ca. 1750-1914	47	0.14%
492: British Politics and Administration of North America	47	0.14%
496: Colonial Lower South	47	0.14%
100: Ancient Near East	46	0.13%
300: Southeast Asia	45	0.13%
392: Central and Eastern Europe, ca. 1000-1500	45	0.13%
416: Italy and the 2 World Wars	44	0.13%
467: General and Regional Andean	44	0.13%
534: Great Plains and Borderlands (United States)	44	0.13%
258: Meiji Restoration, 1868-1912 (Japan)	43	0.12%
326: Modern Era (Islamic World)	43	0.12%
487: 20th-Century Caribbean	43	0.12%
532: Northeast United States	43	0.12%
261: Postwar Japan	41	0.12%
517: Colonial Period Canada	40	0.12%
734: Oral	40	0.12%
753: World 1750-1914	40	0.12%
260: Rise of Militarism and World War II (Japan)	39	0.11%
702: Agricultural	39	0.11%
331: Modern Era Ottoman Empire	38	0.11%
475: 19th-Century Latin America	38	0.11%
485: 20th-Century Mexico	38	0.11%
463: General and Regional Spanish Borderlands	37	0.11%
470: Conquest and Early Settlement of Mexico and Central America	37	0.11%
703: Archaeology	37	0.11%
344: Sub-Saharan Africa 19th c.	36	0.10%
400: Netherlands, ca. 1500-1750	36	0.10%
461: General and Regional Studies (Latin America)	36	0.10%
307: Modern Period Vietnam	35	0.10%
473: Reform and Expansion in Spanish America, 1760-1800	33	0.10%
236: Ming Dynasty (China)	32	0.09%
335: Zionist Movement and Israel	32	0.09%
408: Spain and Portugal, ca. 1750-1914	32	0.09%
421: Postwar France	32	0.09%
468: General and Regional Southern Cone	32	0.09%
472: Spanish America, 1680-1760s	32	0.09%

707: Chicano/Latino	32	0.09%
479: 19th-Century Caribbean	31	0.09%
489: 20th-Century Southern Cone	31	0.09%
381: Proto-Byzantine or Late Roman Period	30	0.09%
415: Spain and Portugal and the 2 World Wars	30	0.09%
482: 20th-Century Latin America	29	0.08%
752: World 1450-1770 CE	29	0.08%
364: Classical Greece	28	0.08%
471: Conquest and Early Settlement of South America	27	0.08%
732: Music	27	0.08%
330: Modern Era Egypt	26	0.08%
393: Scandinavian Kingdoms, ca. 1000-1500	26	0.08%
474: 19th-Century Latin America	26	0.08%
303: Modern Period Southeast Asia, since 1750	24	0.07%
477: 19th-Century Mexico	24	0.07%
200: Central Asia	23	0.07%
325: Islamic Empires, 1500-1800	23	0.07%
481: 19th-Century Southern Cone	23	0.07%
348: Eastern Africa	22	0.06%
372: Early Roman Empire	22	0.06%
465: General and Regional Central America	22	0.06%
333: Modern Era Syria, Lebanon, and Jordan	21	0.06%
394: German Principalities	21	0.06%
716: Exploration	21	0.06%
234: Sung Dynasty (China)	20	0.06%
257: Tokugawa Period, 1600-1868 (Japan)	20	0.06%
270: Korea	20	0.06%
329: Modern Era Iran	20	0.06%
516: Discovery and Settlement of Canada	20	0.06%
105: Egypt (Ancient)	18	0.05%
382: Dark Ages (Byzantium)	18	0.05%
288: Postcolonial India	17	0.05%
336: Palestine and Palestinian Nationalism	17	0.05%
101: Mesopotamia (Ancient)	16	0.05%
371: Rome and Italy to 31 BCE	16	0.05%
218: Modern Central Asia since 1850	15	0.04%
284: Early Modern Empires (India)	15	0.04%
312: Modern Period Philippines	15	0.04%
332: Modern Era Tunisia, Algeria, and Morocco	15	0.04%

365: Hellenistic World	15	0.04%
395: Kingdoms of Eastern Europe	15	0.04%
424: Postwar Italy	15	0.04%
469: Exploration and Early Settlement of Caribbean	15	0.04%
486: 20th-Century Central America	15	0.04%
519: Canada since 1920	15	0.04%
322: The Caliphate in Power, 632-945	14	0.04%
423: Postwar Spain and Portugal	14	0.04%
442: Precontact American Indian	14	0.04%
488: 20th-Century Andean	14	0.04%
733: Numismatics	14	0.04%
324: Mongol and Post-Mongol Periods	13	0.04%
476: 19th-Century Spanish Borderlands	13	0.04%
498: Colonial French and British Canada	13	0.04%
749: World 1000 BCE-300 CE	13	0.04%
102: Syria-Palestine (Ancient)	12	0.03%
231: Ancient China	11	0.03%
240: Taiwan, since 1949	11	0.03%
321: PreIslamic Arabia and the Origins of Islam	11	0.03%
480: 19th-Century Andean	11	0.03%
497: Colonial British Islands	11	0.03%
511: General and Regional Studies of Canada	11	0.03%
720: General Studies	11	0.03%
323: The Fragmentation of Caliphal Power	10	0.03%
512: Atlantic Provinces (Canada)	10	0.03%
518: Dominion of Canada	10	0.03%
232: Ch'in-Han to Sui Dynasties (China)	9	0.03%
233: T'ang Dynasty (China)	9	0.03%
256: Sixteenth Century (Japan)	9	0.03%
343: Sub-Saharan Africa 17th to 18th c.	9	0.03%
349: Central Africa	9	0.03%
363: Archaic Greece	9	0.03%
499: Colonial French and Dutch North American Colonies	9	0.03%
513: Prairie Provinces (Canada)	9	0.03%
750: World 300-1000 CE	9	0.03%
751: World 1000-1500 CE	9	0.03%
202: Early Medieval Central Asia, ca. 550-1200	8	0.02%
276: Korea since 1945	7	0.02%

346: Northeastern Africa	7	0.02%
383: Age of Recovery (Byzantium)	7	0.02%
385: Late Byzantium	7	0.02%
484: 20th-Century Spanish Borderlands	7	0.02%
748: World 4000-1000 BCE	7	0.02%
201: Ancient Central Asia ca. 550 CE	6	0.02%
219: Tsarist Conquest and Rule	6	0.02%
283: "Medieval" India, ca. 600-1500	6	0.02%
327: Modern Era Sudan	6	0.02%
478: 19th-Century Central America	6	0.02%
514: British Columbia	6	0.02%
205: Western Eurasia, ca. 550-1200	5	0.01%
251: Prehistory and Protohistory (Japan)	5	0.01%
255: Muromachi Period, 1333-1660 (Japan)	5	0.01%
286: Postcolonial South Asia	5	0.01%
302: Middle Period Southeast Asia, ca. 1300-1750	5	0.01%
310: Modern Period Malaysia, Singapore, and Brunei	5	0.01%
362: Bronze Age Greece	5	0.01%
223: Under Communist Rule (Central Asia)	4	0.01%
235: Conquest Dynasties (China)	4	0.01%
253: Heian Period, 794-1185 (Japan)	4	0.01%
254: Kamakura Period, 1185-1333 (Japan)	4	0.01%
274: Opening of Korea, 1864-1910	4	0.01%
275: Colonial Korea, 1910-1945	4	0.01%
305: Modern Period Thailand	4	0.01%
306: Modern Period Indochina	4	0.01%
334: Modern Era Iraq	4	0.01%
337: Arabian Peninsula	4	0.01%
341: Sub-Saharan Africa to 600 CE	4	0.01%
422: Postwar Netherlands	4	0.01%
216: Mongol Successor States, Early Manchus	3	0.01%
241: Hong Kong and Macao	3	0.01%
281: Ancient India, ca. 600 BCE-600 CE	3	0.01%
282: Ancient India, ca. 600 BCE-600 CE	3	0.01%
301: Early Southeast Asia to ca. 1300	3	0.01%
304: Modern Period Burma	3	0.01%
311: Modern Period Indonesia	3	0.01%
342: Sub-Saharan Africa 7th to 16th c.	3	0.01%

103: Anatolia (Ancient)	2	0.01%
104: Iran (Ancient)	2	0.01%
106: Nubia (Ancient)	2	0.01%
212: Tibet and Mongols, ca. 1200-1450	2	0.01%
217: Early Modern Tibet	2	0.01%
252: Asuka Old Nara Periods (Japan)	2	0.01%
273: Late Choson and Modern Korea	2	0.01%
289: Postcolonial Pakistan and Bangladesh	2	0.01%
208: Chinggissid Iran and Transcaucasia, ca. 1200-1450	1	0.00%
209: Chinggissid Central Asia, ca. 1200-1450	1	0.00%
210: Golden Horde, ca. 1200-1450	1	0.00%
211: Timur and Timurids, ca. 1200-1450	1	0.00%
214: Volga and Crimean Khanates, ca. 1450-1850	1	0.00%
221: Modern Tibet	1	0.00%
222: Modern Mongolia	1	0.00%
271: Early Traditional Korea	1	0.00%
272: Late Traditional Korea	1	0.00%
287: Postcolonial Afghanistan, Nepal, and Bhutan	1	0.00%
308: Modern Period Cambodia	1	0.00%
309: Modern Period Laos	1	0.00%
328: Modern Era Libya	1	0.00%
Total	34,666	

**8. Dropped/Resigned/Deceased members by category (compared to members added)**

			Total Lost	% lost 1997 #s from Mem #	Total Gained	Loss/Gain	
Code 10	Over	\$70,000	23	845	3%	42	19
Code 11	Over	\$55,000	34	929	4%	61	27
Code 12	Over	\$45,000	41	1,013	4%	52	11
Code 13	Over	\$35,000	90	1,746	5%	113	23
Code 14	Over	\$20,000	94	1,582	6%	124	30
Code 15	Under	\$20,000	120	1,795	7%	241	121
Code 17	Students		299	3,543	8%	939	640
Code 18	K-12 Members		3	116	3%	33	30
Code 19	K-12 Members w. Review		10	154	6%	30	20
Code 20	Associate Members		43	771	6%	94	51
Code 03	Joint Spouse/Partner		7	177	4%	20	13
			764	12,671	5%	1,749	985



## 9. Institutional Services Program (ISP) Report

April 1, 1997 - March 31, 1998

ISP Category	1997 Subscribers	1998 Subscribers	Variance
<b>Category I</b> <i>(PhD program with 21 or more faculty)</i>	95	90	(5)
<b>Category II</b> <i>(PhD program with less than 21 faculty)</i>	44	45	1
<b>Category III</b> <i>(MA program)</i>	137	140	3
<b>Category IV</b> <i>(Undergraduate program only)</i>	252	250	(2)
<b>Category V</b> <i>(Two-year college program only)</i>	5	10	5
<b>Category VI</b>  <i>(Libraries. Historical offices/societies, research institutions)</i>	75	74	(1)
<b>Subtotal full subscribers</b>	608	609	1
<b>Category VIII</b> <i>(Directory listing only)</i>	255	222	(33)
<b>LISTING FEE</b> <i>(for ISP subscribers)</i>	532	548	16

## 10. Institutional Subscription Status Report

### Classes I, II

April 1, 1997 - March 31, 1998

Class	Rate	1996	1997	1998
Class I	\$85.00		375	122
Class I (Agency)	\$76.50		2,650	2,553
<b>Subtotal Class I</b>		<b>2,634</b>	<b>3,025</b>	<b>2,675</b>
Class II	\$105.00		93	62
Class II (Agency)	\$94.50		596	820
<b>Subtotal Class II</b>		<b>632</b>	<b>689</b>	<b>882</b>
<b>Total</b>		<b>3,266</b>	<b>3,714</b>	<b>3,557</b>

*Class I: Receives the Review only*

*Class II: Receives the Review, Perspectives, Program, and Annual Report.*

**5.a.: Member Specialization Numbers (by geographic specialization)**

<b>Category Summary</b>	<b>1992</b>	<b>1998</b>	<b>Variance*</b>
<b>Asia</b>	843	1,389	546
<b>Islamic World/ Near East</b>	135	585	450
<b>Africa</b>	227	369	142
<b>Europe</b>	9,760	9,275	(485)
<b>Americas/ American Indian</b>	89	642	553
<b>Latin America</b>	687	1,385	698
<b>North America</b>	9,498	8,099	(1,399)
<b>World/Western Civilization</b>	555	759	204
	<b>21,239</b>	<b>21,744</b>	<b>505</b>

*\* Variance can be partially attributed to the addition of a significant number of chronological subspecializations for regions outside of the U.S. and Europe, but also to changing patterns in the profession as a whole as reflected in the production of new jobs and history PhDs.*

**5.b.: Member Specialization Numbers (by thematic specialization)**

<b>Category Summary</b>	<b>1992</b>	<b>1998</b>	<b>Variance*</b>
701: African American	328	438	110
702: Agricultural		39	39
703: Archaeology		37	37
704: Art and Architecture	105	138	33
705: Asian American	22	58	36
706: Business		96	96
707: Chicano/Latino	44	32	(12)
708: Comparative		85	85
709: Cultural	618	932	314
710: Demography, Population, and Social Life		81	81
711: Diplomatic/International	784	641	(143)
712: Economic	288	267	(21)
713: Education	125	167	42
714: Environment		125	125
715: Ethnohistory		124	124
716: Exploration		21	21
717: Family		98	98
718: Gay/Lesbian	44	57	13
719: Gender		366	366

720: General Studies		11	11
721: Health and Disease		75	75
722: Historiography	178	326	148
723: Intellectual	839	802	(37)
724: International Relations		121	121
725: Jewish	288	234	(54)
726: Labor	264	382	118
727: Law	312	341	29
728: Literature		55	55
729: Medicine and Health	196	241	45
730: Military	594	483	(111)
731: Minorities and Minority Issues	156	134	(22)
732: Music		27	27
733: Numismatics		14	14
734: Oral		40	40
735: Political	524	569	45
736: Public		65	65
737: Religion	427	712	285
738: Rural		52	52
739: Science and Technology	513	488	(25)
740: Sexuality/Gay/Lesbian		80	80
741: Slavery		107	107
742: Society, Social System, and Values		144	144
743: Social	1361	1,012	(349)
744: Urban	310	364	54
745: Women	1046	1,152	106
999: Other		330	330
	<b>9,366</b>	<b>12,163</b>	<b>2,797</b>

*\* When the new membership forms were instituted in late 1996, a significant number of new categories were added.*

## **6. Use of Computers**

1. Members who own computers: 62 percent
2. Members who have e-mail: 59 percent
3. Members with access to the World Wide Web: 53 percent

## **7. Other Organizations to which AHA Members Belong (ranked by number selected)**

Organization of American Historians	2,689
Southern Historical Assoc.	342
Assoc. for the Advancement of Slavic Studies	303
American Studies Assoc.	302
American Sociological Assoc.	299
Society for Historians of American Foreign Relations	253
North American Conference on British Studies	213
American Antiquarian Society	185
World History Assoc.	177
Medieval Academy of America	170
Latin America Studies Assoc.	169
American Assoc. for State and Local History	164
History of Science Society	149
American Political Science Assoc.	148
Social Science History Assoc.	146
Society for Historians of the Early American Republic	130
Conference on Latin American History	123
German Studies Assoc.	116
American Society of Church History	113
National Council on Public History	111
Society for French Historical Studies	99
American Academy of Religion	95
Middle East Studies Assoc.	91
American Catholic Historical Assoc.	89
Society for the History of Technology	85
Renaissance Society of America	82
African Studies Assoc.	75
Society for Military History	74
American Assoc. of Museums	72

American Society for Legal History	72
American Assoc. for the History of Medicine	70
Assoc. for Asian Studies	70
Institute for Early American History and Culture	66
American Society for Environmental History	64
Society for History Education	63
Society of American Archivists	62
Forest History Society	59
Organization of History Teachers	58
Canadian Historical Assoc.	54
Society for Spanish and Portugese Historical Studies	54
National Council for Social Studies	53
American Society for 18th-century Studies	52
Economic History Assoc.	52
Coordinating Council for Women in History	50
Western Society for French History	50
Modern Language Assoc.	42
Assoc. for Jewish Studies	39
Society for Italian Historical Studies	39
Oral History Assoc.	38
Southern Assoc. Women Historians	38
16th-century Studies Conference	37
Phi Alpha Theta	37
Urban History Assoc.	34
Western Assoc. of Women Historians	33
National Council for History Education	32
American Academy of Arts and Sciences	31
New England Historical Assoc.	30
American Library Assoc.	29
Community College Humanities Assoc.	28
Northeast Womens Studies Assoc.	28
Assoc. for the Study of Afro-American Life and History	26
American Philosophical Assoc.	25
Immigration History Society	25
American Oriental Society	24
American Psychological Assoc.	24
Assoc. of Ancient Historians	24
College Art Assoc.	22
Archaeological Institute of America	19
Berkshire Conference of Women Historians	19
History of Education Society	19

Peace History Society	19
Society for History in the Federal Government	19
Agricultural History Society	18
Business History Conference	18
American Anthropological Assoc.	17
Conference Group for Central European History	17
American Assoc. of University Women	16
American Conference for Irish Studies	16
Society for Historians of the Gilded Age and Progressive Era	16
American Assoc. of University Professors	15
Conference on Faith and History	15
ACH	14
Society of American Historians	14
Iranian Studies Assoc.	14
American Academy of Research Historians of Medieval Spain	13
American Philological Assoc.	13
Society of Biblical Literature	13
Turkish Studies Assoc.	13
American Economic Assoc.	12
Assoc. of American Geographers	12
Conference on British Studies	12
Pacific Historical Assoc.	12
Society for Reformation Research	12
Society for the History of Authorship, Reading, and Publishing	12
American Jewish Historical Society	11
California Historical Society	11
French Colonial Historical Society	11
Phi Alpha Theta	11
Popular Culture Assoc.	11
BRASA	10
Costumes Society of America	10
Polish American History Assoc.	10
Texas State Historical Assoc.	10
American Culture Assoc.	9
American Society for Ethnohistory	9
EBHS	9
MHS	9
ADE	8
American Philosophical Society	8

ARCE	8
British Assoc. of American Studies	8
Law and Society Assoc.	8
NAPS	8
NASSH	8
NCIS	8
RHS	8
SHS	8
Society of Architectural Historians	8
Louisiana Historical Assoc.	8
National Assoc. of Scholars	8
Western History Assoc.	8
AASS	7
ABWH	7
AERA	7
BSA	7
SLS	7
World War II Studies Assoc.	7
ACSUS	6
American Bar Assoc.	6
American Numismatic Society	6
AWSS	6
French History Assoc.	6
Historical Society of Pennsylvania	6
MARAC	6
Modern Greek Studies Assoc.	6
NECLAS	6
North American Society for Ocean History	6
Ohio Academy of History	6
RMCLAS	6
German History Assoc.	6

***Plus another 1,089 organizations with 5 or fewer selections.***



## 1998 Committee Structure

The following is a list of the officers, elected Council members, and the approved committee structure for 1998.

**Council:** Joseph C. Miller (University of Virginia), president; Robert Darnton (Princeton University), president-elect; Joyce Appleby (UCLA), immediate past president; Carla Rahn Phillips (University of Minnesota), vice president, Professional Division; Stanley N. Katz (Princeton University), vice president, Research Division; Leon Fink (University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill), vice president, Teaching Division; Douglas Greenberg (Chicago Historical Society); Nadine Ishitani Hata (El Camino College); Emily Hill (Yale University); Cheryl E. Martin (University of Texas at El Paso); Colin Palmer (Graduate School and University Center, City University of New York); Marilyn B. Young (New York University); Sandria B. Freitag (AHA); ex officio; Michael Grossberg (AHR), ex officio.

**Professional Division:** Carla Rahn Phillips, vice president; Marilyn B. Young, Council member; Leila Fawaz (Tufts University); James Grossman (Newberry Library); Gail L. Savage (St. Mary's College of Maryland); Sandria B. Freitag, ex officio.

**Research Division:** Stanley N. Katz, vice president; Cheryl E. Martin, Council member; Jacqueline Jones (Brandeis University); Barbara Molony (Santa Clara University); Gale Stokes (Rice University); Michael Grossberg (AHR), ex officio; Sandria B. Freitag, ex officio.

**Teaching Division:** Leon Fink, vice president; Nadine Ishitani Hata, Council member; Ron Briley (Sandia Preparatory School); Nupur Chaudhuri (Kansas State University); Teofilo Ruiz (Brooklyn College, City University of New York); Sandria B. Freitag, ex officio.

**Nominating Committee:** Lillie Johnson Edwards (Drew University), *chair*; Michael Les Benedict (Ohio State University); Mary Elizabeth Berry (University of California at Berkeley); Jan E. Goldstein (University of Chicago); Linda B. Hall (University of New Mexico); Helen Lefkowitz Horowitz (Smith College); Philip D. Morgan (Omohundro Institute of Early American History and Culture, College of William and Mary); Leo Spitzer (Dartmouth College); Merry E. Wiesner-Hanks (University of Wisconsin at Milwaukee).

**Committee on Committees:** Robert Darnton, *chair*; Jacquelyn D. Hall (University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill); Edward Muir (Northwestern University); Eric Van Young (University of California at San Diego); Madeline Zelin (Columbia University).

**Committee on Affiliated Societies:** Robert Darnton, *chair*; Colin Palmer, Council member; Robert Schnucker (Truman State University); Barbara Tennebaum (Library of Congress).

### Standing Committees

**Committee on the Harold Vyvyan Harmsworth Professorship in American History:** Robert Dallek (University of California at Los Angeles), *chair*; David M. Kennedy (Stanford University), Robert L. Middlekauff (University of California at Berkeley); Joseph C. Miller, president; Robert Darnton, president-elect.

**Committee on International Historical Activities:** Renate Bridenthal (Brooklyn College, City University of New York), *chair*; Jeremy Adams (Southern Methodist University); Richard L. Kagan

(Johns Hopkins University); Charles D. Smith (University of Arizona); Stefan Tanaka (University of California at San Diego).

**Committee on Minority Historians:** Clara Sue Kidwell (University of Oklahoma), *chair*; Neil Foley (University of Texas at Austin); Yvette Huginnie (University of California at Santa Cruz); Tera Hunter (Carnegie Mellon University); Theresa Mah (University of Chicago); Mrinalini Sinha (Southern Illinois University at Carbondale); Gerald Surh (North Carolina State University).

**Committee on Women Historians:** Carla A. Hesse (University of California at Berkeley), *chair*; Jennifer Brier (Rutgers University); Glenna Matthews (University of California at Berkeley); Guido Ruggiero (Penn State University); Brenda Stevenson (University of California at Los Angeles); Marcia Wright (Columbia University).

### **Prize and Fellowship Committees**

**Committee on the Herbert Baxter Adams Prize:** Kathryn L. Reyerson (University of Minnesota), *chair*; Holger Herwig (University of Calgary); Ronnie Po-Chia Hsia (New York University); Sabine MacCormack (University of Michigan); Allan Megill (University of Virginia).

**Committee on the George Louis Beer Prize:** Stanley Payne (University of Wisconsin at Madison), *chair*; William B. Cohen (Indiana University); Phillip G. Nord (Princeton University); Anson Rabinbach (Princeton University); Pamela Radcliff (University of California at San Diego).

**Committee on the Albert J. Beveridge Award:** John F. Schwaller (University of Montana), *chair*; Elaine Abelson (New School for Social Research); Toby Ditz (Johns Hopkins University); Stanley Engerman (University of Rochester); Gregory Kealey (Memorial University of Newfoundland).

**Committee on the Paul Birdsall Prize:** Leonard Smith (Oberlin College), *chair*; Geoffrey Parker (Ohio State University); Mark Walker (Union College).

**Committee on the James Henry Breasted Prize:** Chun-shu Chang (University of Michigan at Ann Arbor), *chair*; Mikiso Hane (Knox College); David Ludden (University of Pennsylvania).

**Committee on the Albert Corey Award:** Joseph Boudreau (San Jose State University), *chair*; Leslie Choquette (Assumption College); Royden Loewen (University of Winnipeg); John G. Reid (St. Mary's University, Halifax).

**Committee on the John K. Fairbank Prize:** Hoyt Cleveland Tillman (Arizona State University), *chair*; Laura Hein (Northwestern University); Fred Notehelfer (University of California at Los Angeles); Kathleen Uno (Temple University); Jeffrey Wasserstrom (Indiana University).

**Committee on the Herbert Feis Award:** Elizabeth Faue (Wayne State University), *chair*; Fred Hoxie (Newberry Library); John Le Donne (Cambridge, MA); Kenneth Maxwell (Council on Foreign Relations); Fredrika Teute (Omohundro Institute of Early American History and Culture, College of William and Mary).

**Committee on the Leo Gershoy Award:** Harry Liebersohn (University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign), *chair*; James Boyden (Tulane University); Jack Censer (George Mason University); Jo Ann Hoepfner Moran Cruz (Georgetown University); Pamela Smith (Pomona College).

**Committee on the Joan Kelly Memorial Prize:** Ann Twinam (University of Cincinnati), *chair*; Margaret King (Brooklyn College, City University of New York); Stephanie McCurry (University of California at San Diego); Edward Alpers (University of California at Los Angeles)

**Committee on the Littleton-Griswold Prize:** David Konig (Washington University, St. Louis), *chair*; Cornelia Dayton (University of Connecticut); Sarah Barringer Gordon (University of Pennsylvania); James Kloppenberg (Brandeis University); Melvin Urofsky (Virginia Commonwealth University).

**Committee on the Helen and Howard R. Marraro Prizes:** John E. Monfasani (State University of New York at Albany), *chair*; Alexander J. Grab (University of Maine at Orono); Roland Sarti (University of Massachusetts).

**Committee on the Premio del Rey Prize:** Thomas Bison (Harvard University), *chair*; Jodi Bilinkoff (University of North Carolina at Greensboro); David Nirenberg (Rice University); William Phillips (University of Minnesota); Joan Ullman (University of Washington).

**Committee on the James Harvey Robinson Prize:** Michael Monteon (University of California at San Diego), *chair*; George Behlmer (University of Washington); Edmund Burke (University of California at Santa Cruz); Joan Arno (George Washington High School, Philadelphia); Maris Vinovskis (University of Michigan).

**Committee on the Wesley-Logan Prize:** D. Barry Gaspar (Duke University), *chair*; Gwendolyn Hall (Rutgers University); Juliet Walker (Univ. of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign); Cynthia Neverdon-Morton (Coppin State College); Larry Martin (Coppin State College).

**Committee on the John O'Connor Film Award:** Theodore Rabb (Princeton University), *chair*; Victoria de Grazia (Columbia University); Steven Ross (University of Southern California).

**Committee on Research Grant Awards, U.S./Western Hemisphere Grants:** Cheryl E. Martin (Research Division), *chair*; Michael Fellman (Simon Fraser University); Stephen Innes (University of Virginia).

**Committee on Research Grant Awards, Africa, Asia, Europe Grants:** Barbara Molony (Research Division), *chair*; Jerry Bentley (University of Hawaii); Luise White (Princeton University).

**Committee on the Nancy Lyman Roelker Mentorship Award:** Gloria Miranda (El Camino College), *chair*; Margery Ganz (Spelman College); William Paquette (Tidewater Comm. College); Heidi Roupp (Aspen Public Schools); Phillip Troutman (University of Virginia).

**Committee on Teaching Prizes:** Simeon Crowther (California State University at Long Beach), *chair*; James "Chip" Adomanis (Anne Arundel County Public Schools); Thomas Arnold (Yale University); Susan Porter Benson (University of Connecticut); Diego Gonzalez-Grande (Benjamin Franklin High School, New Orleans).

**Committee on the J. Franklin Jameson Fellowship:** Kathleen N. Conzen (University of Chicago), *chair*; Richard D. Brown (University of Connecticut); Gaines Foster (Louisiana State University); Rachel Klein (University of California at San Diego); Theda Perdue (University of Kentucky).

**Committee on the NASA Fellowship:** Lillian Hoddeson (University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign), *chair*; Glenn E. Bugos (The Prologue Group); John I. Guilmartin Jr. (Ohio State University); Joe Mokyr (Northwestern University); Michael Neufeld (National Air and Space Museum, Smithsonian Institution).

### **Special, Joint, and Ad Hoc Committees**

**Joint AHA-Canadian Historical Association Committee:** Henry Yu (University of California at Los Angeles), *chair*; June Namias (University of Alaska); Peter Way (University of Sussex).

**Task Force on the Role of Graduate Students in the AHA:** Emily Hill (Council member), *chair*; Jennifer Brier (Rutgers University); William Powell Jones (University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill); Teresa Mah (University of Chicago); Gail Savage (AHA Professional Division); Fred Schnabel (Harvard University).

**Program Committee for 1998:** John Voll (Georgetown University), *chair*; Gary Kulik (Winterthur Museum, Garden, and Library), *co-chair*; Jeffrey M. Diefendorf (University of New Hampshire); Prasenjit Duara (University of Chicago); James Henretta (University of Maryland at College Park); Linda M. Heywood (Howard University); Michael E. Jiménez (University of Pittsburgh); David R. Kobrin (Charles E. Smith Jewish F School); Claire Moses (University of Maryland at College Park); Martha G. Newman (University of Texas at Austin); Jacqueline A. Rouse (Georgia State University).

### **Delegates**

**Advisory Committee on Historical Diplomatic Documentation:** Warren F. Kimball (Rutgers University).

**American Association for the Advancement of Slavic Studies:** Donald J. Raleigh (University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill).

**American Council of Learned Societies:** Thomas Holt (University of Chicago).

**International Committee of Historical Sciences:** Renate Bridenthal (Brooklyn College, City University of New York).

**National Historical Publications and Records Commission:** Mary Maples Dunn (Schlesinger Library, Radcliffe College).

**Social Science Research Council:** Iris Berger (State University of New York at Albany).

*Note: Sandra B. Freitag, AHA executive director, is an ex officio member of all committees.*

## 25-Year Members of the American Historical Association

Paul Anderson	Michael W. Howell	Robert C. Ovelmen
Raymond O. Arsenault	Randal L. Hoyer	Chester J. Pach Jr.
Muriel A. Atkin	Lynn A. Hunt	Louis B. Pascoe
Emily L. D. Baker	Martin Jay	Stefan J. Patejak
Charles W. Bergquist	Christine E. Johanson	Hans S. Pawlisch
Edwin G. Bilof	James C. Juhnke	Sarah B. Pomeroy
Donald F. Bittner	Bernice M. Kaczynski	Jeremy D. Popkin
James Borchert	Arnold Paul Kaminsk	David Prochaska
Carolyn P. Boyd	Martha B. Katz-Hyman	Davie T. Rawson
Edmund S. Bronder	Frances Richardson Keller	James E. Reed
Allen A. Brostowski	James Curtis Kelly	Janice L. Reiff
Anthony Brundage	William M. Kennedy	Susanne F. Roberts
Lawrence M. Bryant	Eugene J. Kisluk	Sharon Y. Rodgers
Richard L. Bushman	John M. Klassen	Benjamin F. Rogers
Liborio P. Campisi	Stuart Knee	Barbara H. Rosenwein
Ann G. Carmichael	James P. Krokar	Patricia F. Rosof
John W. Cell	Richard G. Kyle	David Harris Sacks
Jill N. Claster	Thomas W. Laqueur	John F. Schwaller
Sarah Cline	Thomas S. Lavin	Hillel Schwartz
Mark R. Cohen	Steven F. Lawson	John K. Sevm
Susan P. Conner	Jane A. Leake	Maciej Siekierski
David R. Contosta	Terje I. Leiren	Joanna Handlin Smith
Francis G. Couvares	Dan Lloyd Lemahieu	Susan M. Socolow
David A. Cressy	Carol Ann Levine	J. Roderick Stackelberg
Donald G. Davis Jr.	Walter M. Licht	William R. Stacy
James H. Edmonson	Sheila Lichtman	Glen R. Sterr
Todd M. Endelman	Mary Lindemann	Stephen Stertz
Patricia B. Ebrey	Joseph H. Lynch	Alice Stroup
Lorraine De Montluzin	Bruce H. Mann	Bill Sumners
Stanley L. Engerman	John A. Marino	Frederick Suppe
Brian S. Fleming	Waldo E. Martin Jr.	James F. Tent
Paul Harris Freedman	Elizabeth W. Marvick	Sandra G. Treadway
Oris D. Friesen	H. A. Mayer	Thomas Turley
Daniel J. Geagan	John M. Mccardell	Judy A. Turner
Edith B. Gelles	Stephen C. McCluskey	C. Paul Vincent
Peter G. Goheen	Bernard J. McGinn	Theodore R. Wachs
Joyce S. Goldberg	Margaret O. McLane	Darlene M. Walk
Irwin Halfond	Janet A. Meisel	Nancy A. Walker
Henry J. Halko	Peter J. Murdaza Jr.	Bernard M. J. Wasserstein
Barbara M. Hallman	Jeffrey W. Merrick	Jacquelin Weisheit
Gordon K. Harrington	Diane Moody	Steven E. Werner
Frank W. Harris	Bradford L. Moore	Ronald G. Witt
Orland G. Heath	Richard J. Morris	John Womack Jr.
Robert M. Hendrick	David B. Moulton	Eric Van Young
Arnold R. Hirsch	Pamela A. Myczek	Jessica E. Young
Peter C. Holloran	Sylvia E. Neely	Robert Zaller
Heidrun Lena Homburg	Thomas F. Noble	Zdenko Zlatar

## 50-Year Members of the American Historical Association

Judah Adelson  
Theodore Lee Agnew Jr.  
Herbert Aptheker  
William C. Askew  
Paul Walden Bamford  
Samuel H. Baron  
Joseph O. Baylen  
Robert E. Berger  
William R. Bishop Jr.  
Arnold Blumberg  
Catherine Sims Boman  
Hugh S. Bonar Jr.  
Aaron M. Boom  
Daniel J. Boorstin  
Woodrow Borah  
Joseph A. Borome  
Catherine E. Boyd  
W. Harland Boyd  
Edward Rommel Brann  
Ira V. Brown  
Catherine A. Bryant  
William H. Cartwright  
Fred A. Cazel Jr.  
Eugene K. Chamberlin  
David Sanders Clark  
Ira G. Clark  
Thomas D. Clark  
Charles C. Cole Jr.  
Joel Colton  
Kenneth S. Cooper  
Richard W. Couper  
J. T. Criscenti  
Noble E. Cunningham  
Richard N. Current  
Karl Henry Dannenfeldt  
William N. Davis Jr.  
Vincent P. Desantis  
Marshall Dill Jr.  
David H. Donald  
Arthur P. Dudden  
A. Hunter Dupree  
Melvin W. Ecke  
David S. Edelstein  
Elizabeth L. Eisenstein  
Arthur A. Ekirch Jr.  
Matthew H. Elbow  
Handy Bruce Fant  
Robert H. Ferrell  
Ralph T. Fisher Jr.  
John Douglas Forbes  
Franklin Lewis Ford  
Elizabeth R. Foster  
John Hope Franklin  
John A. Garraty  
James F. Gillen  
Francis X. Glimm  
Rosaline Goldin  
Donald C. Gordon  
Norman A. Graebner  
Dewey W. Grantham  
Thomas H. Greer Jr.  
William S. Greever  
Gordon Griffiths  
Theodore S. Hamerow  
Sidney S. Harcave  
Paul H. Hardacre  
Mary W. Hargreaves

Thomas T. Helde  
Mahlon H. Hellerich  
Melinda Hennessey  
Richard G. Hewlett  
Brooke Hindle  
I. B. Holley Jr.  
Robert B. Holtman  
Edward H. Howes  
W. Turrentine Jackson  
Edward T. James  
Saul Jarcho  
Charles Jelavich  
Robert W. Johannsen  
George W. Kahler  
Lawrence S. Kaplan  
Jules A. Karlin  
Robert M. Kingdon  
Donald L. Kinzer  
Milton M. Klein  
William A. Klutts  
Arthur G. Kogan  
Enno E. Kraehe  
George W. Kyte  
Donald F. Lach  
Douglas E. Leach  
Thomas H. Leduc  
Hyman Levinson  
Marvin E. Lowe  
Richard Lowitt  
William L. Ludlow  
J. K. Mahon  
James Russell Major  
Thomas G. Manning  
Bernard Mason  
Newell O. Mason  
Samuel Clyde McCulloch  
William H. McNeill  
Glover Moore  
Wentworth S. Morris  
George L. Mosse  
Milton E. Muelder  
John A. Munroe  
Lee N. Newcomer  
William J. Newman  
J. Alden Nichols  
Emiliana P. Noether  
Nancy P. Norton  
Robert R. Palmer  
Theodore P. Palmer  
Harold T. Parker  
Stow S. Persons  
Reginald H. Phelps  
Harold T. Pinkett  
Raymond Polin  
Earl Pomeroy  
Wayne D. Rasmussen  
R. John Rath  
James A. Rawley  
Agnes Lytton Reagan  
Kent C. Redmond  
Richard W. Reichard  
Nicholas V. Riasanovsky  
Moses Rischin  
Ellis Rivkin  
Madeline R. Robinton  
Frederick Rudolph  
Wallace P. Rusterholtz  
Arthur M. Schlesinger Jr.

Henry M. Schreiber  
John Schutz  
Walter A. Sedelow  
Joseph I. Shulim  
Bernard Sinsheimer  
Morris Slavin  
Amherst M. Smith  
Franklin A. Smith  
Lacey B. Smith  
Joseph F. Steelman  
Fritz R. Stern  
Wilbert H. Timmons  
George B. Tindall  
Edward P. Torrey  
Hans L. Trefousse  
Graydon A. Tunstall Jr.  
Roger H. Vanbolt  
Albert E. Vandusen  
Clarence L. Ver Steeg  
Klemens Von Klemperer  
Theodore H. Vonlaue  
Wayne S. Vucinich  
Henry S. Vyverberg  
Evelyn Acomb Walker  
Raymond Walters Jr.  
Robert D. Warth  
Dora B. Weiner  
Marvin Weiner  
Henry R. Winkler  
William L. Winter  
Stanley B. Winters  
C. Vann Woodward  
C. Conrad Wright  
Edith P. Young  
John H. Yzenbaard  
Herbert C. Zafren  
Perez Zagorin  
Oscar Zeichner

## Association Thanks 1998 Endowment Donors

*The Association gratefully acknowledges the generosity of the following members and friends who made gifts to the Endowment Fund from October 30, 1997, to October 20, 1998. These contributions are testimony to AHA members' continuing desire to further the interests of historians through the activities of the Association. Each contribution will play a role in supporting existing activities or in furthering new activities. We are sincerely grateful for these donations and hope that the coming year of 1999 inspires continued support. If we have overlooked anyone, please call us at (202) 544-2422 and let us know. Thank you very much.*

Lois A. Aroian	Ross Charles Horning Jr.	Frederick Rudolph
Theodore H. Andrews	Douglas W. Houston	Sharon V Salinger
Gordon M. Bakken	Rose Chan Houston	Lionel J. Sanders
Redmond J. Barnett	R. Gordon Hoxie	Edwin G. Sanford
Jerry H. Bentley	Reed Hutner	Lowell J. Satre
Robert E Berkhofer Jr.	Alfreda L. Irwin	Kathleen Bergan Schmidt
Lawrence Birken	Saul Jarcho	Arnold Schrier
Maxwell H. Bloomfield	Prescott J. R. Jennings	Reinhold S. Schumann
Shearer Davis Bowman	John R. Johnson	Lois G. Schwoerer
George R Browne	Vincent C. Jones	Aristides Scoufelis
J. E. Browning	Jules A. Karlin	Christoph C. Sellers
James MacGregor Burns	Heinrich Kessler	Paul L. Silver
Eunice A. Charles	Arthur H. Kinnard Jr.	Catherine S. Silverman
James R. Chumney	Jeffrey D. Kolnick	Morris Slavin
Stephanie Cole	Gregory Kuzbida	William H. Smith
E. Dean Conley	Jane L. Landers	Judith Spraul-Schmidt
E Hilary Conroy	Pierre H. Laurent	R. Vladimir Steffel
Richard W. Couper	Young Koo Lee	Joseph F. Stellman
Edith B. Couturier	Richard W. Leopold	Susan M. Stuard
J. T. Criscenti	Terrance L. Lewis	Patricia Thevenet
Paul Jerome Croce	Charles S. Maier	Eckard V. Toy Jr.
Natalie Zemon Davis	James Russell Major	Melvin J. Tucker
Saki S. Dockrill	Carol A. Marsh	Roger H. Vanbolt
Robert J. Donia	James Kirby Martin	Milton I. Vanger
Hunter Dupree	Fred H. Matthews	Clarence L. Versteeg
Dewey P. Fasnacht Jr.	Glenna Matthews	Evelyn Acomb Walker
Leon Fink	Sara E Matthews-Grieco	Peter T. H. Walther
Ralph T. Fisher Jr.	Richard P. McCormick	Paul L. Ward
Ian C. Fletcher	Samuel T. McSeveney	Robert D. Warth
Willard A. Fletcher	Morton J. Merowitz	Ruben E. Weltsch
Stacilee Ford	Stephanie A. Morris	Mary N. Wessling
David A. Gerber	John Muendel	Nicholas Wickenden
Frederick W. Gerbracht	Bryce Nelson	Edward L. Widmer
Rosaline Goldin	Doyce B. Ninis	Henry R. Winkler
Ralph W. Goodwin	Ransom E. Noble	Stanley B. Winters
Sarah B. Gordon	Emiliana R Noether	Christopher B. With
Sidney Gottesfeld	William Palmer	Astrid N. Witschi
Paul H. Hardacre	Harold T Parker	Phyllis B. Woodworth
Louis R. Harlan	Lewis C. Perry	Michael W. Wooley
William J. Hartley	Marco Pluviano	Christine D. Worobec
Susan M. Hartmann	Diane A. Puklin	John W. Yarbrough
Lawrence M. Hauptman	Barbara N. Ramusack	Peter J. Yearwood
Charles W. Hayford	Wayne D. Rasmussen	Edith R Young
Sam Hellinger	Thoreau E. Raymond	Robert L. Zangrando
John M. Hemphill II	Robert J. Riccio	Reginald E. Zelnik
Richard G. Hewlett	R. Arnold Ricks	
Christine Holden	Elaine G. Robison	
	Mark H. Rose	

## 1998 Award for Scholarly Distinction

In 1984 the Council of the AHA established the American Historical Association Award for Scholarly Distinction. Each year a nominating jury composed of three former presidents recommends to the Council up to three names for the award and the Council then selects up to three names from the list presented. Nominees are senior historians of the highest distinction in the historical profession who have spent the bulk of their professional careers in the United States. Previous awards have gone to Nettie Lee Benson, Woodrow Borah, Alfred D. Chandler Jr., Angie Debo, Helen G. Edmonds, Felix Gilbert, John W. Hall, H. Stuart Hughes, Margaret Atwood Judson, George F. Kennan, Paul Oskar Kristeller, Gerhart B. Ladner, Gerda Lerner, August Meier, Edmund Morgan, George L. Mosse, H. Leon Prather Sr., Benjamin Quarles, Edwin O. Reischauer, Nicholas V. Riasanovsky, Caroline Robbins, Carl E. Schorske, Benjamin I. Schwartz, Kenneth M. Setton, Kenneth M. Stamp, Chester E. Starr, Barbara and Stanley Stein, Lawrence Stone, Merze Tate, Emma Lou Thornbrough, Brian Tierney, and George R. Woolfolk.

Joining this distinguished list are Tulio Halperin Donghi (University of California at Berkeley), and Robert O. Paxton (Columbia University). President-elect Darnton read the following citations at the general meeting:

**Tulio Halperin Donghi**, the Muriel McKevitt Sorme Professor of Latin American History emeritus at the University of California at Berkeley, is one of the most distinguished Latin Americanist historians alive today. Beyond his astounding productivity and erudition, his scholarly work has helped strengthen the understanding of Latin American perspectives among Anglophone historians, while at the time bringing nonideological approaches to Argentine history.

He received his doctorate at the University of Buenos Aires in 1955. Among those influencing him were exiled Spanish medievalist Claudio Sanchez Albornoz, the Argentine medievalist and modern intellectual historian Jose Luis Romero, and, during a year studies in Paris, Fernand Braudel. His first 11 years of teaching he spent at the universities of the Litoral and Buenos Aires. Already a well-known historian, by the early 1960s he had become a key member of a circle of young Argentine intellectuals who incisively criticized the dominant polarized visions of Argentine history and society. With academic freedom severely restricted by a new military dictatorship, in 1966 Donghi joined in the mass resignations from the University of Buenos Aires. After brief sojourns Cambridge University; Universidad de la Republica, Montevideo, Harvard University; and Oxford University, in 1971, he joined the history department of the University of California at Berkeley where he taught until his retirement in 1994.

Donghi is the recipient of numerous honors and awards, including the 1976 Clarence Haring Prize from the AHA for the book published by a Latin author between 1971 and 1975; the 1994 Distinguished Service Award from the Conference of Latin American History; three honorary doctorates from Argentine universities; the "University Medal" of the University of Santiago, Chile; and appointment as *profesor-ad-honorem* of the Universidad de la República,



Montevideo and, in 1981, to the prestigious Alfonso Casas Chair at the Nacional Autónoma of Mexico City.

Donghi's scholarly oeuvre is not easy to pigeonhole, because it eschews mono-causal explanations and encompasses different historiographical approaches, from economic and social history to political and intellectual history. His 16 authored books to date treat topics from medieval Spain to the late 20<sup>th</sup> century, but are mostly concerned with Latin American and Argentine history between the 18<sup>th</sup> century and the present. His most influential work has been *The Contemporary History of Latin America*, originally published in 1967. With editions in Italian, Portuguese, French, German, Swedish, and English, by 1993 the book had gone through 13 Spanish editions, and stands as the most widely read history of modern Latin America in the Hispanic world during the second half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century.

While *Contemporary History* offers a powerful indictment of international and domestic structures holding back the full development of the Latin American nation-states and their multifarious social and ethnic groups, it celebrates the rich variety of political and cultural movements that have tried to push forward distinct agendas. Just as importantly, Donghi's copious works on his native country have reshaped our understanding of many major problems in modern Argentine history.

For Donghi no group or nation, no civilization or major region of the world is destined to live forever with characteristics once acquired—such as highly unequal income distribution, or dependency. Nor can the failures of one era—for example, those of Argentina from Peron to the murderous military dictatorship between 1976 and 1983—be described as the inevitable outcome of what has gone before. Thus, Donghi has always looked askance at a cultural determinist juxtaposition of protestant, pragmatic, and utilitarian Anglo-America and catholic, ascriptive, and rent-seeking Latin America. Such decontextualized cultural comparisons seem to him unhelpful in explaining the trajectory of the two regions. In stressing how each generation is responsible for what happens on “its watch,” he injects a powerful liberal antidote into the static and cyclical depictions of Latin America that until recently were so frequent among the region's writers.

Donghi clearly stands as the dean of historians in Argentina. With an oeuvre that is anything but easy to understand, his stature is due to the scope of his studies and their uncompromising analytical depth. An intellectual broker between the North Atlantic world and Argentina, Donghi has remained fully engaged in Argentina's Byzantine and exciting intellectual life even after 32 years of living abroad. Avoiding close identification with any of the ideological fronts that had penetrated academia so deeply in his and the subsequent Argentine generations, Donghi's writings have been important in helping Argentine intellectuals to come to terms with the ghosts of their past.

In the United States he has become so influential among Latin Americanists because he represents the best of Latin America's scholarly traditions—in its catholic scope, its humane and sympathetic portrayal of past societies and cultures, and its intellectual sophistication and complexity.

If it were not such a cliché, one might say that Tulio Halperin Donghi is as close to a “Renaissance man” as one could get in the late 20<sup>th</sup> century. There seems little—at least outside of the natural sciences—that does not interest him, and he can speak with as much clarity and authority about Gramsci's conception of state-civil society relations at a meeting of Marxism specialists, as about European solutions for solid waste removal, or indeed the latest generation of Latin American soap operas. Living and studying appear to be seamlessly connected for him,

tied by ceaseless observation, reading, reflection, and writing. Not surprisingly, he approaches his work with a profound sense of humor about the human comedy, although balancing it with a sense of caring.

Tulio Halperin Donghi is a man at the pinnacle of his profession, whose profound impact both here and abroad has already proven to outlast particular vogues and intellectual fashions. He is most deserving of this high distinction.

**Robert O. Paxton**, who is currently professor emeritus at Columbia University, is one of the preeminent historians of modern France. He earned his BA degree in 1954 at Washington and Lee University; continued his studies as a Rhodes Scholar at Oxford University, where he earned a BA and MA in 1956; and completed his PhD at Harvard University in 1963, where he worked with H. Stuart Hughes and Stanley Hoffmann.

Although Robert Paxton has spent most of his career at Columbia University, where he was named the Mellon Professor of the Social Sciences, he spent the early years of his career at the University of California at Berkeley, and at SUNY, Stony Brook.

Robert Paxton's two most influential books on Vichy France, *Vichy France: Old Guard and New Order, 1940-1944*, published in the United States in 1972 and translated into French the following year, and the book he coauthored with Michael R. Marrus, *Vichy France and the Jews*, published in France and the United States in 1981, have quite literally reshaped the historiography of the Vichy era. Like Marcel Ophüls's film, *The Sorrow and the Pity*, which also appeared in the early 1970s, Paxton's *Vichy France* demonstrated that the Vichy regime collaborated with the Nazis, not simply because of external German pressure or to shield France from direct German control so as to covertly resist German demands, an argument put forth by Marshal Pétain, Pierre Laval, and other Vichy officials after the war. Rather, Paxton offered convincing evidence that Vichy leaders, in deciding to cooperate with the Nazis, were pursuing their own ideological goals, that is, the implementation of a conservative and authoritarian "National Revolution," based on the antirepublican, antidemocratic, and antiliberal ideology long espoused by the French far right. Paxton thus shattered the longstanding Gaullist myth that France, even under Vichy, had remained at heart a nation of resisters, and he demonstrated that an important sector of the French political elite, and of French society in general, perceived the defeat of 1940 less as a catastrophe than as an opportunity to score a major victory in what he called "the French civil war."

While Vichy France devoted considerable attention to the anti-Jewish policies of the Vichy regime, Paxton further elaborated on this theme in his book, *Vichy France and the Jews*, coauthored with Michael Marrus. In this book, Paxton and Marrus offered conclusive evidence that Vichy France's anti-Jewish policies, including the implementation of anti-Jewish legislation, the internment of foreign Jews, and ultimately the deportation of Jews to the death camps in Poland between 1942 and 1944, were not merely the result of German pressure. Rather, they argued that Vichy leaders, in implementing much of this anti-Jewish program, were acting out of indigenous French rather than German impulses. They furthermore demonstrated that the anti-Jewish policies of the Vichy regime were not marginal, as many French historians had previously contended. Rather, according to Paxton and Marrus, these anti-Jewish policies stood at the very heart of the Vichy enterprise. The effort to root out the enemy within—Jews, Freemasons, and communists—was in reality part and parcel of the regime's broad-based attack on the revolutionary heritage of 1789.

Paxton's work represents contemporary scholarship at its very best. *Vichy France and the Jews* make both powerful and challenging arguments, but they are at the same time judicious in their reasoning and grounded in French and German archival research; indeed, Paxton was the first to make extensive use of German archival sources in his analysis of the Vichy regime. Moreover, these two works have had an enduring impact, particularly in France. As Kim Munholland has noted in a 1994 review (in *French Historical Studies*) of recent French scholarship on the Vichy era "for all of the efforts to go beyond Paxton's fundamental text on Vichy, the findings and most of the conclusion of that work ... remain the foundation for all subsequent work on Vichy."

Yet Paxton's books are more than outstanding examples of historical scholarship. Their authoritative and balanced interpretations have been of critical importance in France's recent coming to grips with its Vichy past and with Vichy's role in the genocide of the Jews in particular. Few if any American scholars have played so important a part in shaping the way another country has dealt with the traumatic and often shameful aspects of its history during the Nazi era.

Even the French government has recognized Paxton's enormous impact on contemporary debates about the Vichy past. In 1994 it called on Paxton to serve as an expert witness in the state's case against Paul Touvier (a member of the Milice, a German militia sponsored by Vichy, who was involved in anti-Jewish and anti-Resistance atrocities in Lyons). In 1997 the government again called on Paxton to serve as an expert witness for the prosecution in the trial of Maurice Papon (the former secretary general of the Gironde prefecture who authorized the deportation of some 1,600 Jews from Bordeaux). In recognition of his outstanding contribution to France's attempt to come to terms with its past, the French government named Paxton an *officier* in the *Ordre National du Mérite* in 1992 and a *commandeur* in the *Ordre des Arts et des Lettres* in 1996.

Although Robert Paxton is best known for his work on Vichy France, he has many other achievements to his credit. His textbook, *Europe in the Twentieth Century*, is without question the leading textbook on 20<sup>th</sup>-century Europe. Most recently, Robert Paxton has published a study on French agrarian fascism—*French Peasant Fascism: Henry Dorgères' Greenshirts and the Crisis of French Agriculture, 1929-1939* (New York: Oxford University Press, 1996), which makes a major contribution to our understanding of French rural politics in the 1930s, a subject that has hitherto attracted little attention. Furthermore, by situating his study within a broad comparative framework, Paxton sheds new light on reasons for the relative failure of rural fascism in France, as opposed to the success of similar movements in Italy and Germany.

Currently, Paxton is working on a reassessment of fascism. His recent article, "The Five Phases of Fascism" in the *Journal of Modern History* (March 1998), a comparative study of fascist movements, promises to break several long-standing logjams in the study of this controversial subject, by shifting our focus away from fascist ideology and toward fascist practice, and by analyzing the kinds of political alliances that permitted fascists to come to power.

In addition to his numerous books and articles, Robert Paxton has also served as an important public historian, as his numerous reviews in the *New York Review of Books* and the *Times Literary Supplement* as well as his role as consultant to Claude Chabrol for the French TV documentary film *L'Oeil de Vichy* (TFI, 1993) illustrate. Robert Paxton's judgments in these more popular formats are always judicious, balanced, and well informed, and he writes with a clarity of prose that is all too rare these days. Robert Paxton has also shown great dedication to

the historical profession. He continues to serve on the board of directors of the French American Foundation, and he has served on the AHA nominating committee, as well as the George Louis Beer and the Herbert Baxter Adams Prize Committees. He has also served on the editorial boards of the *Journal of Modern History*, *French Historical Studies*, and *Military Affairs*.

One aspect of Robert Paxton's career that may not be apparent to those not affiliated with any of the three institutions where he has taught is his extraordinary role as a teacher and mentor. Robert Paxton has trained numerous scholars working in the fields of French and modern European history today, and his students will forever be indebted to him for the enormous time and energy he invested in their work. The many books that grew out of dissertations sponsored by Robert Paxton would never have been of such high caliber without the benefit of his direction. Moreover, Robert Paxton has always been an excellent colleague, always generous and helpful in his comments and criticisms. This aspect of his career, as well as the enduring influence of his scholarship, were recognized in September 1997 when a number of his former students organized an international conference, "To Overcome a Past: Vichy France and the Historians," to honor Paxton's achievement upon his retirement from Columbia.

In light of Robert Paxton's decisive influence on the fields of modern French and modern European history, and in light of the critical role he has played in shaping France's understanding of its Vichy past, it is most fitting for the AHA to honor Robert Paxton with the 1998 Award for Scholarly Distinction.

### **Eugene Asher Distinguished Teaching Award**

Established in 1986, the Eugene Asher Distinguished Teaching Award recognizes outstanding teaching and advocacy for history teaching at two-year, four-year, and graduate colleges and universities. The award is named for the late Eugene Asher, for many years a leading advocate for history teaching. The Society for History Education (SHE) shares with the AHA sponsorship of the award. It recognizes inspiring teachers whose techniques and mastery of subject matter made a lasting impression and substantial difference to students of history. Members of the AHA and SHE submit nominations to the Committee on Teaching Prizes.

**Edward Berenson**, professor of history and French studies at New York University, is this year's recipient of the Eugene Asher Distinguished Teaching Award. President-elect Darnton read the committee's citation:

"Professor Berenson is both a distinguished teacher of history and a leader in the efforts to improve the quality of history teaching at the state and local level. As a faculty member at the University of California at Los Angeles, he was a highly effective teacher of both graduate and undergraduate students, receiving the university's Distinguished Teaching Award in 1991. In addition, he was a faculty leader in the university-wide effort to reform the undergraduate General Education Program. In 1990, Berenson became the founding executive director of the California History-Social Science Project (CHSSP), a state-funded organization devoted to joining university historians and K-12 teachers in a common effort to improve history education. Under his leadership, the CHSSP grew to include 10 university professional development sites for teachers offering summer institutes involving hundreds of K-12 teachers and college faculty. These faculty in turn worked with other colleagues as the impact of the project multiplied throughout the state. In addition to this successful project, Professor Berenson has also been actively involved in the drafting of parts of the national history standards as well as the California History-Social Science Framework, the curricular outline for California public school

students. Professor Berenson is a distinguished teacher of history who has done much to improve the quality of history teaching beyond his own classroom.”

### **Beveridge Family Teaching Award**

Established in 1995, this prize honors the Beveridge family's long-standing commitment to the AHA and to K-12 teaching. Friends and family members endowed this award to recognize excellence and innovation in elementary, middle, and secondary-school history teaching, including career contributions and specific initiatives. The individual can be recognized either for individual excellence in teaching or for an innovative initiative applicable to the entire field. It is offered on a two-cycle rotation: in even-numbered years, to an individual; in odd-numbered years, to a group. The prize was first offered in 1996. The 1998 prize was given to an individual teacher.

President-elect Darnton announced that the third award would be given to **Henry John Assetto** of Gordon Middle School in Coatesville, Pennsylvania. The Committee on Teaching Prizes' citation stated that “Henry John Assetto has had an exemplary career as a middle-school history teacher, a leader in curriculum development and coordination for his school district, and as a model and mentor for a large number of aspiring teachers. He has taught eighth grade history for nearly 30 years and many of his students characterize their experiences in his classes as life changing in the ways in which they were involved in learning about other times and other cultures. Henry Assetto has also brought his insights and experience as a successful teacher to the role of longtime curriculum coordinator for his district. His efforts significantly enhanced the professional quality of the curriculum and, along with his innovative multicultural programs, helped his school to receive recognition at the state and national level. Henry Assetto has also spent two decades as a mentor to student teachers, cooperating with local universities in the training of new teachers and receiving plaudits from many of them for his efforts on their behalf. The committee believes that Henry John Assetto epitomizes the excellence in K-12 teaching that the Beveridge Family Teaching Prize was established to recognize and applaud.”

### **John E. O'Connor Film Award**

In recognition of his exceptional role as a pioneer in both teaching and research regarding film and history, the American Historical Association established this award in honor of John E. O'Connor of the New Jersey Institute of Technology. The award seeks to recognize outstanding interpretations of history through the medium of film or video. Essential elements are stimulation of thought, imaginative use of the media, effective presentation of information and ideas, sensitivity to modern scholarship, and accuracy. The production should encourage viewers to ask questions about historical interpretations as well as make a contribution to the understanding of history.

The sixth O'Connor Award was presented to ***The War Symphonies: Shostakovich versus Stalin***, produced by Larry Weinstein, production company Rhombus Media. President-elect Darnton read the committee's citation: “*The War Symphonies* is a documentary of great power and originality, which is notable for its skill in telling a complex story without a narrator. Instead, the words are derived from two sources: quotations from the participants in the struggle between Shostakovich and Stalin, and interviews with contemporary observers of that struggle. The result is a remarkable evocation of a crucial era in Soviet history, a stirring demonstration of

the force of music, even in political affairs, and a fascinating explication of the historical meanings hidden in major compositions.”

### **Nancy Lyman Roelker Mentorship Award**

In recognition of Nancy Lyman Roelker’s role as a teacher, scholar, and committee member of the historical profession, and on the occasion of her 75th birthday, friends, colleagues, and former students established the Nancy Lyman Roelker Mentorship Award. The annual award recognizes and encourages a special quality exemplified by Professor Roelker through the human component in her teaching of history.

Mentoring should encompass not only a belief in the value of the study of history but also a commitment to and a love of teaching it to students regardless of age or career goals. Advising is an essential component, but it also combines a consistent personal commitment by the mentor to the student as a person. Offering a human alternative, frequently in quiet and unacknowledged ways, mentors like Professor Roelker believe that the essence of history lies in its human scope. With this award, the American Historical Association attests to the special role of mentors to the future of the historical profession.

The award is given on a three-cycle rotation to graduate, undergraduate, and secondary-school teacher mentors. Nominations for the 1998 prize were for the graduate level. President-elect Darnton read the following citation: **Estelle B. Freedman** of Stanford University is the recipient of the seventh annual Nancy Lyman Roelker Mentorship Award. She exemplifies the qualities of the quintessential mentor. Her career underscores the premise and qualities of mentorship: being forthright, support, constructively critical, and maintaining a commitment to students as individuals.

Professor Freedman’s mentoring style has earned high praise from many of her former students who recognize in her those essential qualities that have shaped their own careers. One former student noted that “she never told me what I wanted to hear, but what I needed to hear.” Another added that “...Estelle makes mentoring look so easy, a central part of her role as a teacher, a reward in and of itself.” Yet to others, Professor Freedman was “an oasis of calm strength and wisdom” and a mentor of “unassailable integrity.” Professor Freedman’s commitment to her students has shaped their personal and professional lives. One recalled asking “how I could every repay her for all the help she had given me throughout the years. She then told me, with complete sincerity, that the best way to repay her was to be a good adviser to my own students.” For this reason, Professor Freedman epitomizes for many of her students the model teacher and mentor.

As the seventh annual recipient of the Nancy Lyman Roelker Mentorship Award, Estelle B. Freedman’s name has been added to the distinguished list of honored mentors who have enriched, inspired, and nurtured students in both their professional and personal lives.

### **Honorary Foreign Member**

At its second annual meeting in Saratoga in 1885, the newly appointed Committee on Nominations for Honorary Membership introduced a resolution, which was adopted, that appointed Leopold von Ranke as the first honorary foreign member. In the intervening 113 years, only 85 individuals have been so honored. Previously selected biennially, selection is now made

annually, honoring a foreign scholar who is distinguished in his or her field and who has “notably aided the work of American historians.”

President-elect Darnton announced the addition of Manuel R. Moreno Fraginals of Cuba.

Manuel Moreno has been Cuba’s most influential and outstanding historian during the last four decades. He has made many distinguished scholarly contributions relating to Cuban history, particularly the history of Cuban sugar and slavery. He has been a most generous scholar in helping foreign historians work in and about Cuba, under what can only be described as sometimes difficult conditions. This has included scholarly help with questions as well as arrangements for access to archives within Cuba. His works on Cuban slavery, particularly *El Ingenio*, have been the central works on Cuba drawn upon by U.S. scholars in their comparative studies of slavery in America. Much of the current views on sugar and slavery in Cuba have been shaped by Dr. Moreno’s writings and by scholarly interactions with him. Dr. Moreno’s major work, *El Ingenio*, first published in 1964, has been translated into several different languages including English (as *The Sugarmill*), for which he received the AHA’s Clarence Haring Prize for the best book in Latin American history in 1982. A three-volume edition, currently available only in Spanish, was published in 1977.

One measure of Dr. Moreno’s value to the profession is the frequency with which scholars in other countries seek him out and find him helpful. He has received appointments at U.S. institutions, traveled extensively throughout this country, and has worked collaboratively with American scholars. His relationship with American historians goes well beyond these visits and collaborative projects, however. Virtually every American scholar who has conducted research on Cuba has benefited from his work. He has also lent his support, advice, and friendship to many American scholars of Cuban history. It was through Dr. Moreno that many young historians in Cuba “discovered” the studies of slavery, plantation societies, and abolition that were being conducted in the United States and to which American scholars had no access. In supporting Dr. Moreno’s nomination, colleagues state that he “was ... a silent ambassador for American historians” to Cuba. And that “despite the uncontrollable circumstances that forced him several times into unwelcome exile, he continued to research thoroughly and to write actively and to inspire his fellow scholars all with uncommon devotion and impeccable excellence.” Another said, “Whatever we have achieved, we owe it largely to him.”

The American Historical Association is honored to acknowledge Manuel Moreno Fraginals’s role in the international community of historians by selecting him as the Honorary Foreign Member for 1998.

## 1998 Book Awards

At the annual meeting in Washington, D.C., the following prizes were announced for the year 1998. The committee's citations are recorded below:

### Herbert Baxter Adams Prize

**David Nirenberg** (Rice University) for *Communities of Violence: Persecution of Minorities in the Middle Ages* (Princeton University Press, 1996). In this subtle, deeply researched, theoretically sophisticated work, David Nirenberg contends that much of the violence against minorities that he finds in early 14<sup>th</sup>-century France and in the Crown of Aragon was aimed, not at eliminating minorities, but at maintaining boundaries. He also argues, against an influential historiographical tradition, that violence against minorities may perhaps best be seen as arising, not out of ancestral popular prejudice, but out of contingencies prevailing at specific times and places.

### George Louis Beer Prize

**Jeffrey Herf** (Ohio University) for *Divided Memory: The Nazi Past in the Two Germanys* (Harvard Univ. Press, 1997). *Divided Memory* presents a masterful account of the interrelationship between memory of the Nazi past, the Holocaust, and political developments in the two Germanys. Based on extensive and pathbreaking new research in both East and West German archives, it places these two contrasting patterns within the broader context of German history and the international relations of the cold war, and is particularly illuminating with regard to policy and doctrine in East Germany. Its scope is not, however, limited to Germany alone, serving to enrich a broader understanding of the postwar period.

### Albert J. Beveridge Award

**Philip D. Morgan** (Omohundro Institute of Early American History and Culture, College of William and Mary) for *Slave Counterpoint: Black Culture in the Eighteenth-Century Chesapeake and Lowcountry* (University of North Carolina Press for Omohundro Institute of Early American History and Culture, 1998). Ingeniously framed as a comparison between slave societies in the Chesapeake and the Lowcountry, *Slave Counterpoint* beautifully reconstructs the variety and complexity of the African American slave experience in the 18<sup>th</sup> century. Morgan deftly synthesizes existing demographic and archeological scholarship with his own pathbreaking—and prodigious—research. For all its wealth of detail and nuance, Morgan's narrative is refreshingly lucid. *Slave Counterpoint* is at once the summation of a generation's worth of painstaking scholarship and the starting point for future research.

### Paul Birdsall Prize



**John F. Beeler** (University of Alabama) for *British Naval Policy in the Gladstone-Disraeli Era, 1866-1880* (Stanford University Press, 1997). John Beeler has written a book whose significance goes well beyond naval and strategic history. He shows the vulnerability of British power at precisely the moment when that power seemed at its zenith. Technological change, the global economy of empire, and the Gladstone-Disraeli rivalry all shaped British naval policy at least as much as any external threat. Through prodigious research, Beeler crafts a bold and elegant survey of how naval and political cultures of the hegemonic power of the day faced the challenges and dilemmas of modernity.

#### **Albert Corey Prize**

**Elizabeth Vibert** (University of Victoria) for *Traders' Tales: Narratives of Cultural Encounters in the Columbia Plateau, 1807-1846* (University of Oklahoma Press, 1997). Elizabeth Vibert's work contributes to our understanding of both the native peoples of this time and place and their British and eastern North American observers. The work contains critiques of the historic narratives of fur traders and travelers, organized into topical chapters. Vibert analyzes how the cultural backgrounds of these observers shaped perceptions of the peoples and landscapes they encountered. The result is a sophisticated and fascinating cross-cultural study, a model of its type.

#### **John K. Fairbank Prize**

**Louise Young** (New York University) for *Japan's Total Empire: Manchuria and the Culture of Wartime Imperialism* (University of California Press, 1998). Louise Young explores how Japanese expansion in the 1930s combined a vast array of state and private interests to construct Manchuria into the jewel in the crown of Japan's imperial ambitions. She shows how a broad spectrum of the Japanese public envisioned, experienced, and constructed the dream of total empire. This book is oriented more toward European theories of empires than to East Asian comparisons between China and Japan.

#### **Herbert Feis Award**

**Ann Vileisis** (independent scholar) for *Discovering the Unknown Landscape: A History of America's Wetlands* (Island Press, 1997). *Discovering the Unknown Landscape* imaginatively explores the metaphoric and physical history of America's wetlands and makes visible struggles to preserve this valuable natural resource as a public policy issue. The book traces the history of American perceptions and uses of wetlands—from an early fascination and fear of “miasmatic evil” to contemporary efforts to preserve wetlands against economic development and ecological disaster. Through historical, literary, and environmental sources, Vileisis reveals the larger historical forces at work in the use and abuse of the continent's resources. Conflicts over common use versus private ownership, government control versus individual development and customary rights versus special interests have led to conflicting claims, misunderstandings, and abuses of wetlands areas. As an independent scholar, Vileisis is to be commended for a study that analyzes the competing cultural values that support the impulses to expropriate and preserve nature's bounty.

### Leo Gershoy Award

**Carla Rahn Phillips** and **William D. Phillips Jr.** (University of Minnesota) for *Spain's Golden Fleece: Wool Production and the Wool Trade from the Middle Ages to the Nineteenth Century* (Johns Hopkins Univ. Press, 1997). *Spain's Golden Fleece* redefines the economic history of early modern Spain by arriving at fresh conclusions about one of its key sectors. Overturning long-standing criticisms of wool production, it demonstrates the suitability of large-scale herding to Spain's social interests and natural conditions. It reveals, too, the continuing vitality of the Spanish textile industry in what was once thought to be a declining economy. The Phillipses have integrated ecology, economy, demography, and politics in a work written with flawless clarity

### Joan Kelly Memorial Prize

**Ellen Carol DuBois** (University of California at Los Angeles) for *Harriot Stanton Blatch and the Winning of Woman Suffrage* (Yale University Press, 1997). Spanning centuries and crisscrossing the Atlantic, this biography illuminates feminist generations through the life of Harriot Stanton Blatch, who sustained the legacy of her more famous mother Elizabeth Cady Stanton, passed a postsuffragist agenda to her daughter, and forged a left feminist politics that, without institutional legacy, became forgotten. With verve and insight, Ellen Carol DuBois shifts historiographical attention from the vote to politics, revising the standard story of women's rights in the process.

### Littleton-Griswold Prize

**Barry Cushman** (University of Virginia) for *Rethinking the New Deal Court. The Structure of a Constitutional Revolution* (Oxford University Press, 1998). Barry Cushman's book provides a powerful revision of the famous "switch in time" of the Supreme Court in 1937, which has been conventionally interpreted as a political capitulation to the electoral triumph of the New Deal. *Rethinking the New Deal Court* demonstrates that the abandonment of the paradigm of laissez-faire constitutionalism was the product of a steady unraveling of an intellectual system beginning decades earlier, and that the accommodation of social and economic legislation was the culmination of a profound redefinition of the distinction between "public" and "private" in constitutional jurisprudence. The book's method—an astute and skillful examination of the internal legal debates of the judges' mental world—will compel scholars and jurists to reevaluate the process by which constitutional change occurs.

### Helen and Howard R. Marraro Prize

**Anthony L. Cardoza** (Loyola University of Chicago) for *Aristocrats in Bourgeois Italy: The Piedmontese Nobility, 1861-1930* (Cambridge Univ. Press, 1997). Anthony Cardoza's study stands out for thorough research, sound conceptualizations, and imaginative use of documents.

The issue that it confronts is that of the role of the nobility in a world increasingly influenced by democratic practices and by new forces of production. The study follows the Piedmontese nobility through these transformations, documenting both its relative loss of economic power and its retention of political and social influence in the national state thanks to its base of support in the countryside, close relations with church and crown, and traditions of public service. Professor Cardoza explores the nobility's strategy for survival with keen sensitivity to the changing attributes of power, the symbolic significance of nobiliar titles and lifestyles, and the role of informal networks of influence based on clubs, schools, and family ties. The nobility's strategy for survival emerges from this study as marked by adaptability and resilience in the face of change, its decline slower and less precipitous than previously envisioned. With its imaginative use of new documentation, enlightening references to developments in other countries, and firm grasp of the complexities and subtleties of historical change, this study improves significantly our understanding of the role of the Italian and European nobilities.

### **Premio del Rey Prize**

**Simon Barton** (University of Exeter) for *The Aristocracy in Twelfth-Century León and Castile* (Cambridge University Press, 1997). This book deals with a major historical subject from the sources, including imprinted archival sources, with imaginative sweep and depth. It places the problems of status, family, property, and economic constraints in comparative contexts, while distinguishing clearly between the greater nobility of the royal courts and the lesser knights. Well organized and readable, this welcome study will help to bring the peculiarities of elite experience in the Spanish realms to the attention of a wide readership.

### **James Harvey Robinson Prize**

**Eileen H. Tamura, Linda K. Menton, Noren W. Lush, Francis K. C. Tsui, and Warren Cohen** (University of Hawaii at Manoa) for *China: Understanding Its Past* (Curriculum Research and Development Group, University of Hawaii and the University of Hawaii Press, 1997). This work is an extraordinary collaboration; the writing is seamless and completely accessible to the nonspecialist. The authors use an array of biographical, visual, and sound materials to bring each era to life: maps, art reproductions, photographs, and a compact disc of music and sounds are all striking. The Robinson Prize Committee felt that given its brevity and attractiveness, this would be an excellent text not only on China but to use in world history classes.

### **Wesley-Logan Prize**

**Philip D. Morgan** (Omohundro Institute of Early American History and Culture, College of William and Mary) for *Slave Counterpoint: Black Culture in the Eighteenth-Century Chesapeake and Lowcountry* (University of North Carolina Press for Omohundro Institute of Early American History and Culture, 1998). In this book Philip Morgan has tackled an enormously complex set of themes in pursuit of his main objective to decode the multiple meanings and forms of black culture, derived from and shaped by the experience of slavery, in

the Chesapeake and the Lowcountry during the 18<sup>th</sup> century. Morgan explores a staggeringly wide range of issues imaginatively and insightfully, drawing on a similarly wide range of sources to show that several quite powerful currents of forces shaped black culture, and that among them the agency of people of African descent was decisive. The analysis in this deeply probing historical investigation is meticulous, courageous, and intellectually stimulating, raising and answering troublesome questions and pointing to numerous new areas for further inquiry. Morgan's work has set standards of excellence in scholarship about the African diaspora that will be hard to surpass.

*Note: By committee decision the James Henry Breasted Prize was not awarded in 1998.*

# **Financial Report of the AHA for the Year Ended June 30, 1998**

## **INDEPENDENT AUDITORS' REPORT**

To the Council  
American Historical Association  
Washington, DC

We have audited the accompanying statement of financial position of American Historical Association as of June 30, 1998, and the related statements of activities, changes in net assets, and cash flows for the year then ended. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Association's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit.

We conducted our audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Those standards require that, we plan, and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of American Historical Association as of June 30, 1998, and the changes in its net assets and its cash flows for the year then ended in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.

As discussed in Note I to the financial statements, for the year ended June 30, 1997 the Association changed its method of accounting for contributions, and its method of financial reporting and financial statement presentation.

Rockville, Maryland  
September 25, 1998

**MEMBER: AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS**

**American Historical Association**  
**STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION**  
June 30, 1998

**ASSETS**

Current Assets:	
Investments at market value,	\$3,112,748
Accounts receivable	\$53,851
Employee receivable	\$18,000
Grant receivable	\$14,750
Prepaid expenses	\$16,769
Total current assets	<u>\$3,216,118</u>
Investment: at market value,	\$530,101
Property, plant and equipment at cost:	
Land	\$8,000
Building and improvements	\$362,029
Furniture and equipment	\$503,372
	<u>\$873,401</u>
Less accumulated depreciation	<u>(\$450,138)</u>
Total property, plant and equipment	<u>\$423,263</u>
Other asset:	
Deposits	\$1,000
Total assets	\$4,170,482

**LIABILITIES AND NET ASSETS**

Current liabilities:	
Outstanding checks in excess of bank balance	\$56,685
Note payable - line of credit	
Accounts payable	\$40,808
Accrued vacation	\$56,210
Deferred revenue:	
Exhibits	\$91,215
Subscriptions	\$145,572
Total liabilities	<u>\$390,490</u>
Net assets:	
Unrestricted:	
Undesignated	<u>(\$37,283)</u>
Designated (Note 1)	\$2,272,505
Property, plant, and equipment (Note 1)	\$423,263
Total unrestricted	<u>\$2,658,485</u>
Temporarily restricted (Note 1)	\$712,225
Permanently restricted (Note 1)	\$409,282
Total net assets	<u>\$3,779,992</u>
Total liabilities and net assets	\$4,170,482

*See Notes to Financial Statements*

**American Historical Association**  
**STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES**  
**YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 1998**

	Unrestricted	Temporarily Restricted	Permanently Restricted	Total
Revenues, gains, other support:				
Membership	\$870,930			\$870,930
Annual Meeting	\$456,176			\$456,176
Publications	\$426,742			\$426,742
American Historical Revue	\$403,078			\$403,078
Interest and Dividends	\$68,617	\$32,299		\$100,916
Contributions, grants and contracts	\$52,693	\$79,250		\$131,943
Endowment fund revenue	\$15,500			\$15,500
Miscellaneous	\$2,784			\$2,784
Realized gain on security sales	\$75,680	\$35,624		\$111,304
Unrealized gain on investments	\$330,543	\$155,592		\$486,135
Net assets released from restrictions				
Satisfaction of program restrictions	\$111,390	(\$111,390)		
Total revenues, gains and other support	\$2,814,133	\$191,375	\$0	\$3,005,508
Expenses				
Membership	\$116,545			\$116,545
Council	\$236,309			\$236,309
Annual meeting	\$266,660			\$266,660
Publications	\$410,748			\$410,748
American Historical Revue	\$584,203			\$584,203
Promotion	\$17,561			\$17,561
Development	\$18,874			\$18,874
Grants	\$19,738			\$19,738
Contributions / coalitions	\$47,855			\$47,855
Administration	\$446,126			\$446,126
Management fee	\$14,905			\$14,905
Restricted fund	\$111,390			\$111,390
Prizes and related expenses				
designated funds	\$5,058			\$5,058
Depreciation	\$50,548			\$50,548
Total expenses	\$2,346,520	\$0	\$0	\$2,346,520
Changes in net assets	\$467,613	\$191,375	\$0	\$658,988

*See Note to Financial Statements.*

**American Historical Association**  
**STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN NET ASSETS**  
**YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 1998**

	Unrestricted	Temporarily Restricted	Permanently Restricted	Total
Net assets:				
Balances, July 1, 1997, as previously reported	\$1,319,357	\$1,483,615	\$309,282	\$3,112,254
Adjustments applicable to prior period		\$8,750		\$8,750
Balances, July 1, 1997, as restated	\$1,319,357	\$1,492,365	\$309,282	\$3,121,004
Changes in net assets	\$467,613	\$191,375		\$658,988
Transfers	\$871,515	(\$971,515)	\$100,000	
Balances, June 30, 1998	\$2,658,485	\$712,225	\$409,282	\$3,779,992
	-----	-----	-----	-----

*See Note to Financial Statements.*



**American Historical Association**  
**STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS**  
**YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 1998**

Cash flows from operating activities:	
Change in net assets	\$658,988
Adjustments to reconcile change in net assets to net cash provided by (used in) operating activities:	
Depreciation	\$50,548
Changes in assets and liabilities:	
(Increase) decrease in accounts receivable	\$15,636
(Increase) decrease in contribution receivable	(\$18,000)
(Increase) decrease in grant receivable	(\$6,000)
(Increase) decrease in employee receivable	\$2,526
(Increase) decrease in prepaid expenses	(\$2,578)
(Increase) decrease in deposits	\$700
(Increase) decrease in accounts payable	(\$72,745)
(Increase) decrease in accrued vacation	(\$8,857)
(Increase) decrease in deferred revenue	\$43,461
Gain on security sales	(\$111,304)
Unrealized gain on marketable equity securities	(\$486,135)
Net cash provided by (used in) operating activities	\$66,240
Cash flows from investing activities:	
Proceeds from sale of investments	\$470,224
Purchase of investments	(\$448,728)
Purchase of property and equipment	(\$29,349)
Net cash provided by (used in) investing activities	(\$7,853)
Cash flows from financing activities:	
Net borrowings (payments) from revolving credit agreements	(\$96,137)
Net cash provided by (used in) financing activities	(\$96,137)
Net increase (decrease) in cash	(\$37,750)
Cash:	
Balances, July 1, 1997	(\$18,935)
Balances, June 30, 1998	(\$56,685)

*See Notes to Financial Statements*

# AMERICAN HISTORICAL ASSOCIATION

## NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

### **1. Nature of organization and significant accounting policies:**

#### **Unrestricted property, plant, and equipment:**

##### **Nature of organization:**

The American Historical Association (Association) is a nonprofit membership corporation founded in 1884 and incorporated by Congress in 1889 for the promotion of historical studies, the collection and preservation of historical manuscripts, and the dissemination of historical research.

**A summary of the significant accounting policies of the Association is as follows:**

##### **Changes in accounting principles:**

Accounting for contributions:

The Association adopted Statement of Financial Accounting Standards (SFAS) No. 116, "Accounting for Contributions Received and Contributions Made, " whereby contributions received are recorded as unrestricted, temporarily restricted, or permanently restricted support depending on the existence and/or nature of any donor restrictions. Restricted net assets are reclassified to unrestricted net assets upon satisfaction of the time or purpose restrictions.

Financial reporting and financial statement presentation:

The Association adopted SFAS No. 117, "Financial Statements of Not-for-Profit Organizations. " Under SFAS No. 117, the Association is required to report information regarding its financial position and activities according to three classes of net assets: unrestricted, temporarily restricted, and permanently restricted. In addition, the Association is required to present a statement of cash flows. The Association has discontinued its use of fund accounting and, accordingly, has reclassified its financial -statements to present these classes of net assets.

##### **Basis of presentation:**

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared on the accrual basis of accounting in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. Net assets and revenues, expenses, gains, and losses are classified based on the existence or absence of donor-imposed restrictions. Accordingly, net assets of the Association and changes therein are classified and reported as follows:

##### **Unrestricted net assets:**

Net assets that are not subject to donor-imposed stipulations.

**Unrestricted designated:**

The unrestricted designated net assets have been set aside by the Council (equivalent to the board of directors) of the Association for a particular purpose. The Council, at any time, can vote to change the designation of these net assets for another purpose, including to unrestricted net assets.

**Unrestricted property, plant, and equipment**

The unrestricted property, plant, and equipment net assets reflect transactions relating to the property, plant, and equipment owned by the Association, which is purchased through transfers from the unrestricted undesignated net assets

**Temporarily restricted net assets:**

Net assets subject to donor-imposed stipulations that may or will be met, either by actions of the Association and/or the passage of time. When a restriction expires, temporarily restricted net assets are reclassified to unrestricted net assets and reported in the statement of activities as net assets released from restrictions

**Permanently restricted net assets:**

Net assets subject to donor-imposed stipulations that they be maintained permanently by the Association. Generally, the donors of these assets permit the Association to use all or part of the income earned on any related investments for general or specific purposes.

**Revenue recognition:**

Revenue (except membership dues) is recognized in the period in which it is earned (accrual method). By contrast, dues are recognized when received (cash method) due to difficulties in extracting the appropriate information from the membership database system). Annual fees collected in advance are recorded as deferred revenue. Subscriptions are recognized on a straight-line basis over the subscription period.

**Cash and cash equivalents:**

For purposes of reporting the statement of cash flows, the Association includes all cash accounts, which are not subject to withdrawal restrictions or penalties, and have original term to maturity of less than three months, as cash on the accompanying balance sheet.

**Investments:**

Marketable equity securities and marketable debt securities are carried at market value. Increases or decreases in market value are recognized in the period in which they occur, as unrealized gains or losses.

**Contribution receivable:**

The Association includes all unconditional promises to give in their financial statements as a contribution receivable in accordance with SFAS No. 116. These receivables are recorded at their fair value.

**Property, plant and equipment:**

Property, plant and equipment are stated at cost. Depreciation is calculated using the straight-line method over the estimated useful lives of the related assets which range from 3 to 40 years. The Association capitalizes all property, plant and equipment purchases in excess of \$500.

**Income tax status:**

The Internal Revenue Service has determined that the Association is exempt from federal income tax under Internal Revenue Code Section 501(c)(3). The Association is subject to taxation on net unrelated business income.

**Estimates:**

Management uses estimates and assumptions in preparing these financial statements. Those estimates and assumptions affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities, the disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities, and the reported revenue and expenses. Actual results could vary from the estimates that were assumed in preparing the financial statements.

**2. Investments:**

The Association's investment balances consist of the following as of June 30, 1998:

	Cost
Temporary Investments	\$320,000
U.S. Treasury Bonds and Notes	\$499,434
Corporate Bonds and Other	\$75,331
Common Stock	\$809,963
Convertible Bonds and Preferred Stock	\$57,090
Cash	\$236
Total	<u>\$1,762,054</u>

**3. Contribution receivable:**

The Association's contribution receivable balance consists of one unconditional promise to give. It is recorded at fair value, which is the amount of the unconditional promise to give, due to the promise to pay is less than 12 months from the statement of financial position date of June 30, 1998. The amount of the Association's contribution receivable as of June 30, 1998, is \$18,000.

#### **4. Property, plant, and equipment:**

Property, plant, and equipment in the unrestricted designated fund consisted of the following at June 30, 1998:

Land	\$8,000
Building and improvements	\$362,029
Furniture and equipment	\$503,372
	<hr/>
	\$873,401
Less accumulated depreciation	(\$450,138)
	<hr/>
Total	<hr/> <hr/> \$423,263

Depreciation expense charged to the unrestricted fund during the year ended June 30, 1998, was \$50,548.00

The Association's land is stated at cost.

#### **5. Note payable - line of credit/subsequent event:**

The Association has a revolving line of credit of \$180,000. Interest is charged at the financial institution's prime rate plus .50%. Collateral consists of approximately \$200,000 of U.S. Treasury Bonds and Notes. The outstanding borrowings at June 30, 1998 were \$0. The interest rate at June 30, 1998 was 9.0% and the amount of interest charged to operations for the year ended June 30, 1998 was \$8,015. The line of credit expires on October 10, 1998.

#### **6. Pension plan:**

The Association has a defined contribution pension plan which is funded through the purchase of individual annuity contracts. The plan, which covers all eligible employees, allows an employee to defer at least five percent of their annual salary. Ten percent of the employee's annual salary is contributed by the Association. The Association's pension expense for the year ended June 30, 1998 was \$47,728.

#### **7. Fundraising expenses:**

The Association's fundraising expense for the year ended June 30, 1998 was \$17,272. The Association did not incur any expenses that would be considered to be joint costs.

#### **8. Grants and contracts:**

The Association is a recipient of various grant and contract awards. Upon completion or expiration of a grant or contract, unexpended funds which are not available for general purposes of the Association are either returned or maintained for future restricted purposes.

**9. Adjustments applicable to prior period:**

The beginning temporarily restricted net asset balance was restated for grants receivable. Association understated grants receivable from the prior period by \$8,750, due to the change in accounting policy (cash basis to accrual basis).

**10. Net asset transfers to/(from):**

The Association had classified the Albert J. Beveridge Memorial Fund as temporarily restricted. However, during the year ended June 30, 1998, it was determined that \$100,000 should have been classified as permanently restricted. In addition, during the year ended June 30, 1998, the board of directors of the Association voted to transfer the beginning temporarily restricted net asset balances of the Albert J. Beveridge Memorial Fund (less the \$100,000 transferred to permanently restricted), Littleton-Griswold Fund, and David M. Matteson Fund to the unrestricted-designated net assets. The amount of this transfer was \$813,546, and was due to the Association meeting donors explicit stipulations in prior years. Also, during the year ended June 30, 1998, the Association's management determined that nine special projects were complete and that the Association had met all donor stipulations in prior years. The amount of this transfer was \$57,969.

NISHI, PAPAGJIKA & REGER, P.C.

CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS & CONSULTANTS

**INDEPENDENT AUDITORS' REPORT  
ON THE SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION**

To the Council  
American Historical Association  
Washington, DC

Our audit was made for the purpose of forming an opinion on the basic financial statements taken as a whole. The supplementary information, which follows, is presented for purposes of additional analysis and is not a required part of the basic financial statements. Such information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and, in our opinion, is fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the basic financial statements taken as whole.

Rockville, Maryland  
September 25, 1998

MEMBER: AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS





**American Historical Association**  
SCHEDULE OF CHANGES IN TEMPORARILY RESTRICTED FUNDS - \*  
YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 1998

Investment Revenue, Gain and Expense

Fund, Grant, or Contract	Balances, July 1, 1997 as restated	Contributions, Grants and Contracts	Interest and Dividends	Gain on Security Sales	Management Fee - #	Unrealized Gain on Investments	Expenses - @	Net asset Transfers (to) from	Balances, June 30, 1998
Prize Funds:									
Herbert Baxter Adams Prize Fund	\$22,722		\$912	\$1,006	(\$198)	\$4,394	(\$448)		\$28,388
Ancient History Prize Fund - James H. Breasted Fund	\$4,434		\$501	\$553	(\$109)	\$2,415	(\$379)		\$7,415
George Louis Beer Prize Fund	\$55,550		\$1,992	\$2,197	(\$433)	\$9,597	(\$785)		\$68,118
Beveridge Family Prize Fund	\$16,543		\$1,202	\$1,326	(\$261)	\$5,792	(\$372)		\$24,230
Paul Birdsall Prize Fund	\$8,915		\$622	\$686	(\$135)	\$2,998	(\$125)		\$12,961
Albert Corey Prize Fund	\$25,512		\$1,662	\$1,833	(\$361)	\$8,006	(\$125)		\$36,527
Premio del Rey Prize Fund	\$9,176		\$657	\$725	(\$143)	\$3,166	(\$125)		\$13,456
John H. Dunning Prize Fund	\$21,796		\$783	\$864	(\$170)	\$3,772	(\$318)		\$26,727
John K. Fairbank Prize Fund	\$39,975		\$1,578	\$1,741	(\$343)	\$7,603	(\$689)		\$49,865
Morris D. Forkisch	\$19,740		\$1,176	\$1,297	(\$255)	\$5,665	(\$384)		\$27,239
Leo Gershoy Prize Fund	\$37,543		\$1,564	\$1,725	(\$340)	\$7,536	(\$700)		\$47,328
William Gilbert Prize Fund	\$7,393		\$572	\$631	(\$124)	\$2,757	(\$259)		\$10,970
Clarence H. Haring Prize Fund	\$18,127		\$695	\$767	(\$151)	\$3,349			\$22,787
Joan Kelly Prize Fund	\$18,510		\$1,224	\$1,350	(\$266)	\$5,897	(\$508)		\$26,207
Michael Kraus Prize Fund	\$33,152		\$1,584	\$1,747	(\$344)	\$7,632	(\$1,022)		\$42,749
Howard R. Marraro Prize Fund	\$14,994		\$822	\$907	(\$179)	\$3,962	(\$405)		\$20,101
Nancy Roelker Award	\$9,073		\$891	\$982	(\$194)	\$4,291	(\$341)		\$14,702
Rockefeller Foundation Grant - Herbert Feis Prize Fund	\$16,823		\$554	\$611	(\$120)	\$2,667	(\$463)		\$20,072
Wesley-Logan Prize Fund	\$15,162		\$499	\$550	(\$108)	\$2,403	(\$426)		\$18,080
Andrew D. White Prize Fund	\$11,346		\$374	\$412	(\$81)	\$1,798	(\$756)		\$13,093
Total Prize Funds	\$406,486	\$0	\$19,864	\$21,910	(\$4,315)	\$95,700	(\$8,630)		\$531,015
Special projects:									
Access to Archives	\$3,738		\$123	\$136	(\$27)	\$592		(\$4,562)	\$0
American Association for Higher Education		\$1,500					(\$500)		\$1,000
Central European History Prize Fund	\$14,847		\$476	\$525	(\$103)	\$2,293			\$18,038
Hispanic Archives, NEH	\$31,399		\$1,033	\$1,139	(\$224)	\$4,977	(\$14,910)	(\$23,414)	\$0
Guide to Historical Literature, Mellon	\$66		\$3	\$3	(\$1)	\$10		(\$81)	\$0
Image as Artifacts Videodisk	\$5,130		\$169	\$186	(\$37)	\$813	(\$14)	(\$6,247)	\$0

Image as Artifacts Tape	\$3,003		\$99	\$109	(\$21)	\$476	(\$3,666)	\$0
J. Franklin Jameson Fund	\$30,549		\$1,005	\$1,109	(\$218)	\$4,842	(\$5,244)	\$32,043
NAEP	\$562		\$19	\$20	(\$4)	\$89	(\$686)	\$0
National Aeronautics and Space Administration Fellowship Program	\$6,072	\$34,750					(\$29,250) (\$11,572)	\$0
Pro-Cite (GHL)	\$4,151		\$137	\$151	(\$30)	\$658	(\$5,067)	\$0
Oxford University Press - Guide to Historical Literature	\$50,380		\$1,658	\$1,828	(\$360)	\$7,985		\$61,491
Spencer Foundation		\$43,000					(\$1,443)	\$41,557
World History Standards	\$22,436		\$738	\$814	(\$160)	\$3,556	(\$22,436) (\$4,948)	\$0
Total Special Projects	\$172,333	\$79,250	\$5,460	\$6,020	(\$1,185)	\$26,291	(\$73,797) (\$60,243)	\$154,129
Howard R. Marraro Prize Fund								
Funds:								
Albert J. Beveridge Memorial Fund	\$418,559		\$3,290	\$3,629	(\$715)	\$15,849	(\$14,157) (\$418,559 )	\$7,896
Littleton-Griswold Fund	\$221,769		\$823	\$908	(\$179)	\$3,964	(\$7,790) (\$219,495 )	\$0
David M. Matteson Fund	\$273,218		\$2,862	\$3,157	(\$622)	\$13,788	(\$273,218 )	\$19,185
Total Funds	\$913,546	\$0	\$6,975	\$7,694	(\$1,516)	\$33,601	(\$21,947) (\$911,272 )	\$27,081
Totals	\$1,492,365	\$79,250	\$32,299	\$35,624	(\$7,016)	\$155,592	(\$104,374) (\$971,515 )	\$712,225

\* Total balances for some of the funds should be calculated by combining the amounts reported on this schedule (temporarily restricted), with amounts listed on the two following schedules (permanently restricted and unrestricted - designated).

# The management fee is levied by the portfolio management company.

@ - This column reports direct expenditures (including prize amounts) and indirect cost of AHA administration.

**American Historical Association**  
**SCHEDULE OF PERMANENTLY RESTRICTED FUNDS**  
**YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 1998**

Prize Funds:

Herbert Baxter Adams Prize Fund	\$5,000
Ancient History Prize Fund - James H. Breasted Fund	\$10,800
George Louis Beer Prize Fund	\$5,000
Beveridge Family Prize Fund	\$20,000
Paul Birdsall Prize Fund	\$10,000
Albert Corey Prize Fund	\$25,000
Premio del Rey Prize Fund	\$10,800
John H. Dunning Prize Fund	\$2,000
John K. Fairbank Prize Fund	\$7,990
Morris D. Forkisch	\$16,000
Leo Gershoy Prize Fund	\$10,000
William Gilbert Prize Fund	\$10,000
Clarence H. Haring Prize Fund	\$3,000
Joan Kelly Prize Fund	\$18,692
Michael Kraus Prize Fund	\$15,000
Howard R. Marraro Prize Fund	\$10,000
Nancy Roelker Award	\$18,000
Total Prize Funds	<u>\$197,282</u>

Funds:

Albert J. Beveridge Memorial Fund	\$100,000
Littleton-Griswold Fund	\$25,000
David M. Matteson Fund	\$87,000
Total Funds	<u>\$212,000</u>

Total Permanently Restricted Funds	<u><u>\$409,282</u></u>
------------------------------------	-------------------------

## **American Historical Association**

### **SCHEDULE OF UNRESTRICTED – DESIGNATED FUNDS YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 1998**

	Albert J. Beveridge Memorial Fund	\$377,485
Endowment Fund		\$685,509
	Littleton-Griswold Fund	\$260,548
David M. Matteson Fund		\$324,866
Bernadotte Schmitt Endowment Fund		\$624,097
Total Unrestricted - Designated Funds		<u>\$2,272,505</u>

**American Historical Association**  
**SCHEDULE OF PARTICIPATION IN INVESTMENTS HELD BY**  
**FIDUCIARY TRUST COMPANY OF NEW YORK**  
**JUNE 30, 1998**

	Participation Percentage	Market Value
Special Funds and Grants:		
Access to Archives	0.1219	\$4,440
Herbert Baxter Adams Prize Fund	0.9039	\$32,927
Ancient History Prize Fund - James H. Breasted Fund	0.4967	\$18,094
George Louis Beer Prize Fund	1.9742	\$71,918
Beveridge Family Prize Fund	1.1915	\$43,404
Albert J. Beveridge Memorial Fund	13.6471	\$497,142
Paul Birdsall Prize Fund	0.6167	\$22,466
Central European History Prize Fund	0.4716	\$17,180
Albert Corey Prize Fund	1.6469	\$59,995
Premio del Rey Prize Fund	0.6513	\$23,726
John H. Dunning Prize Fund	0.7759	\$28,264
Endowment Fund	18.3193	\$667,346
John K. Fairbank Prize Fund	1.5639	\$56,970
Morris D. Forkisch Prize Fund	1.1653	\$42,450
Leo Gershoy Prize Fund	1.5501	\$56,469
William Gilbert Prize Fund	0.5671	\$20,658
Clarence H. Haring Prize Fund	0.6888	\$25,093
Hispanic Archives, NEH	1.0238	\$37,294
Image as Artifacts Videodisk	0.1673	\$6,093
Image as Artifacts Tape	0.0979	\$3,567
J. Franklin Jameson Fund	0.9960	\$36,284
Joan Kelly Prize Fund	1.2130	\$44,187
Michael Kraus Prize Fund	1.5700	\$57,192
Littleton-Griswold Fund	8.0459	\$293,099
Howard R. Marraro Prize Fund	0.8149	\$29,687
David M. Matteson Fund	11.7449	\$427,847
Mellon - Guide	0.0022	\$78
NAEP	0.0183	\$668
Oxford University Press - Guide to Historical Literature	1.6426	\$59,839
Pro-Cite (GHL)	0.1353	\$4,930
Rockefeller Foundation Grant -- Herbert Feis Prize Fund	0.5485	\$19,981
Nancy Roelker Prize	0.8827	\$32,156
Berndotte Scmitt Endowment	17.4233	\$634,703

Wesley Logan Prize	0.4944	\$18,009
Andrew D. White Prize Fund	0.3699	\$13,476
World History Standards	0.7315	\$26,648
Total Special Funds and Grants	<u>94.2746</u>	<u>\$3,434,280</u>
General Fund	<u>5.7254</u>	<u>\$208,569</u>
Total Participation in Investments Held by Fiduciary Trust Company of New York	100.0000	\$3,642,849